



Department of Informatics
King's College London
United Kingdom

7CCSMPRJ - Individual Project

Explainable Deep Reinforcement Learning for Portfolio Optimisation of Financial Assets

Name: **Ingrid Pérez Aguilera**

Student Number: K24087939

Course: Computational Finance M.Sc.

Supervisor: **Riaz Ahmad**

Word count: 14793

I verify that I am the sole author of this report and the accompanying source code, except where explicitly stated to the contrary.

Following the submission of the project, I grant the Department and the University the right to make it publicly available via the library electronic resource, as long as I retain copyright of the project.

I confirm this report does not exceed 15,000 words.

Submission date: August 21, 2025

Abstract

The dynamic and stochastic nature of financial markets together with highly non-stationary and noisy financial time series data make the task of portfolio optimisation particularly challenging. However, their nature makes them particularly well-suited for Deep Reinforcement Learning (DRL) algorithms, which can learn a trading strategy directly from the environment. Nonetheless, there are still significant challenges preventing its widespread adoption in the financial industry, such as the difficulty in finding the appropriate algorithm with a suitable reward function and their lack of transparency and interpretability. This thesis proposes an explainable DRL model for portfolio optimisation with the ability to leverage historical data to learn the optimal trading strategy that balances return maximisation and risk minimisation. Five prominent DRL algorithms are implemented and their performance is evaluated in different scenarios, including the impact of a larger environment representation, portfolio size and asset composition. Once the algorithms are trained, post-hoc explainability techniques are applied to understand which market conditions lead to a particular portfolio allocation. Although the performance of the algorithms does not generally outperform all of the benchmarks, the results show that the agents are a powerful tool in portfolio management capable of learning from high-dimensional data and adapting to changing market conditions. The crucial contribution of this research lies in the explainability framework, particularly the use of SHapley Additive exPlanations (SHAP) to provide insights into the decision-making process over the entire testing period in conjunction with interpretation for specific trading days.

Acknowledgements

I would like to express my gratitude to my supervisor, Dr. Riaz Ahmad, for his guidance and support throughout this project. I would also like to thank my Master's colleagues for being there during this journey and the valuable discussions we had.

I would like to convey my appreciation to my partner for his unwavering support and all the help in reviewing the code and the report. I would also like to acknowledge my family's continuous support and encouragement throughout my studies.

Table of Contents

1	Introduction	1
1.1	Objectives	3
1.2	Report Structure	4
2	Background	6
2.1	Portfolio Optimisation	6
2.1.1	Modern Portfolio Theory	7
2.2	Deep Reinforcement Learning	9
2.2.1	Reinforcement Learning	10
2.2.2	Deep Reinforcement Learning Algorithms	15
2.3	Explainable Artificial Intelligence	22
2.3.1	Feature Importance	24
2.3.2	Local Interpretable Model-agnostic Explanations	24
2.3.3	Shapley Additive Explanations	26
2.4	State of the Art of Deep Learning and Explainability for Portfolio Optimisation	31
3	Methodology	35
3.1	Problem Definition	35
3.2	Markov Decision Process Model	36

3.3	Deep Reinforcement Learning Algorithms	39
3.3.1	Hyper-parameter tuning	39
3.4	Post-hoc Explainability	40
3.4.1	Surrogate Model Explainability	41
3.4.2	Direct Model Explainability	42
4	Results	43
4.1	Dataset	43
4.2	Experiment Design	44
4.3	Evaluation	46
4.3.1	Performance Metrics	46
4.3.2	Benchmark Strategies	48
4.4	Deep Reinforcement Learning Algorithm Experiments	49
4.4.1	Algorithm Comparison	49
4.4.2	Environment Representation	52
4.4.3	Hyper-parameter Tuning	55
4.5	Explainability Results	56
4.5.1	Feature Importance Results	57
4.5.2	Local Interpretable Model-agnostic Explanations Results	59
4.5.3	Shapley Additive Explanations Results	60
5	Legal, Social, Ethical and Professional Issues	65
5.1	Legal Issues	65
5.2	Social Issues	66
5.3	Ethical Issues	67
5.4	Professional Issues	68
6	Conclusion	69

6.1	Future Work	70
References		72
A Algorithms		82
A.1	Deep Reinforcement Learning Algorithms	82
A.2	Explainability Algorithms	88
B State Representation		89
B.1	Technical Indicators	89
B.2	Macroeconomic Indicators	94
C Hyper-parameter tuning		96
C.1	Hyper-parameter search space	96
C.2	Default Hyper-parameter Configuration	97
C.3	Default Hyper-parameter Selection	98
D Datasets		101
D.1	Equities	101
D.1.1	Dow Jones 30	101
D.1.2	Euro Stoxx 50	103
D.1.3	FTSE 100	107
D.2	Commodities	112
D.3	Currencies	112
E Experiment Results		114
E.1	Experiment: Algorithm Comparison	114
E.2	Experiment: Environment Representation	116
F Explainability Results		118

F.1	Feature Importance	118
F.2	Local Importance Model-Agnostic Explanation Results	120
F.3	Shapley Additive Explanations	120
G	Code	124
G.1	Configuration Module	127
G.2	Data Download and Pre-processing Module	138
G.3	Agents Module	148
G.4	Environments Module	152
G.5	Benchmarking Module	159
G.6	Explainability Module	164
G.7	Visualisation Module	176
G.8	Optimisation Module	192
G.9	Examples	196

List of Figures

2.1	Efficient Frontier in Risk-Return Space. [1]	9
2.2	Agent interaction with environment.	11
2.3	Markov Decision Process with policy, transition, and reward functions.	12
2.4	Taxonomy of Reinforcement Learning Algorithms [2].	17
2.5	Taxonomy of Explainable Artificial Intelligence Methods [3].	23
4.1	Evolution of the Cumulative Returns for the DowJones30 dataset with the OHLCV prices and indicators environment representation.	51
4.2	Top features from the surrogate model according to feature importance.	58
4.3	Mean feature importance per asset from the surrogate model.	59
4.4	LIME explanations for the A2C algorithm for a specific observation in the test dataset for the MSFT asset. The orange bars indicate features that contribute positively to the prediction, while the blue bars indicate features that contribute negatively.	60
4.5	Beeswarm SHAP explanations for the A2C algorithm for the AAPL asset. The x-axis represents the SHAP values, whilst the y-axis represents the top features. The colour indicates the feature value, with magenta being high and blue being low.	62
4.6	SHAP force plot for the weight allocation of the AAPL asset for the A2C algorithm.	63
4.7	SHAP force plot for the impact of MSFT low price feature in the weight allocation of the AAPL asset for the A2C algorithm.	64

4.8	SHAP force plot for the weight allocation of the AAPL asset for the A2C algorithm at the first time step of the test dataset.	64
C.1	Train-Validation-Test Split for the Hyper-parameter tuning on a sample of five assets from the Dow Jones Industrial Average index.	99
C.2	Hyper-parameter tuning results for the A2C algorithm.	100
F.1	Top features grouped by asset from the surrogate model according to feature importance.	119
F.2	Mean feature importance per type of feature from the surrogate model. .	119
F.3	LIME explanations for the A2C algorithm for a specific observation in the test dataset for the AAPL asset.	120
F.4	LIME explanations for the A2C algorithm for a specific observation in the test dataset for the CSCO asset.	120
F.5	LIME explanations for the A2C algorithm for a specific observation in the test dataset for the HON asset.	121
F.6	LIME explanations for the A2C algorithm for a specific observation in the test dataset for the V asset.	121
F.7	SHAP force plot for the weight allocation of the CSCO asset for the A2C algorithm at the first time step of the test dataset.	122
F.8	SHAP force plot for the weight allocation of the HON asset for the A2C algorithm at the first time step of the test dataset.	122
F.9	SHAP force plot for the weight allocation of the MSFT asset for the A2C algorithm at the first time step of the test dataset.	122
F.10	SHAP force plot for the weight allocation of the V asset for the A2C algorithm at the first time step of the test dataset.	123

List of Tables

2.1	Comparison of Deep Reinforcement Learning Algorithms.	22
4.1	Algorithm comparison results for the A2C implementation across the different datasets under the indicators feature set.	49
4.2	Algorithm comparison results for the DowJones30 dataset with prices and indicators feature set. The colours correspond to the best performing configurations, with blue for the best performing DRL algorithm and green for the best benchmark.	51
4.3	Environment representation experiment comparison according to the Sharpe ratio. The colours correspond to the best performing per row, with blue for the DowJones30 dataset and green for the Commodities dataset. . . .	53
4.4	Hyper-parameter tuning experiment results for the DowJones30 dataset for simple and indicators feature set. The colours correspond to the best performing configurations, with blue for the best performance on the simple feature set and green for the indicators one.	55
C.1	Hyper-parameter tuning configurations for different RL algorithms.	96
C.2	Default hyper-parameter configurations.	97
C.3	Results of hyper-parameter tuning on the test dataset.	100
D.1	Constituents of the Dow Jones Industrial Average index as of April 2025. [4]	101
D.2	Constituents of the Euro Stoxx 50 index as of April 2025[5].	103
D.3	Constituents of the FTSE100 index as of April 2025. [6]	107

D.4	List of 6 Commodities chosen for the portfolio.	112
D.5	List of 10 currency pairs chosen for the portfolio.	113
E.1	Algorithm comparison results for the PPO implementation across the different datasets under the indicators feature set.	115
E.2	Algorithm comparison results for the DDPG implementation across the different datasets under the indicators feature set.	115
E.3	Algorithm comparison results for the TD3 implementation across the different datasets under the indicators feature set.	115
E.4	Algorithm comparison results for the SAC implementation across the different datasets under the indicators feature set.	116
E.5	Environment representation experiment comparison according to the cumulative return. The colour correspond to the best performing per row, with blue for the DowJones30 dataset and green for the Commodities dataset.	117

List of Algorithms

1	Advantage Actor-Critic (A2C) Pseudo-code	83
2	Proximal Policy Optimisation (PPO) Pseudo-code	84
3	Deep Deterministic Policy Gradient (DDPG) Pseudo-code	85
4	Twin Delayed Deep Deterministic Policy Gradient (TD3) Pseudo-code . .	86
5	Soft Actor-Critic (SAC) Pseudo-code	87
6	Shapley Value Approximation	88

Nomenclature

Numbers and Arrays

a	Scalar
\mathbf{a}	Vector
\mathbf{A}	Matrix
$\mathbf{1}$	Matrix of 1's

Sets

\mathbb{A}	Set
\mathbb{R}	Set of real numbers
$[a, b]$	Real interval including a and b
(a, b)	Real interval excluding a and b
$[a, b)$	Real interval including a but excluding b
$(a, b]$	Real interval excluding a but including b
$\{0, 1\}$	Set containing 0 and 1
$\{0, 1, \dots, n\}$	Set of all integers between 0 and n inclusive
\emptyset	Empty set
$\mathbb{A} \subset \mathbb{B}$	Set \mathbb{A} is a proper subset of set \mathbb{B}
$\mathbb{A} \subseteq \mathbb{B}$	Set \mathbb{A} is a subset or equal to set \mathbb{B}
$\mathbb{A} \cap \mathbb{B}$	Intersection of sets \mathbb{A} and \mathbb{B}

$\mathbb{A} \cup \mathbb{B}$ Union of sets \mathbb{A} and \mathbb{B}

$\mathbb{A} \setminus \mathbb{B}$ Set difference of sets \mathbb{A} and \mathbb{B}

Indexing

a_i Element i of vector \mathbf{a} , with indexing start at 1

$A_{i,j}$ Element i, j of matrix \mathbf{A} , with indexing start at 1

Algebra Operations

\mathbf{A}^T Transpose of matrix \mathbf{A}

\mathbf{A}^{-1} Inverse of matrix \mathbf{A}

Probability

$P(x)$ Probability distribution over a random variable x

$E[x]$ Expected value of random variable x

$Var[x]$ Variance of random variable x

$Cov[x, y]$ Covariance of random variables x and y

μ Mean

σ Standard deviation

σ^2 Variance

Σ Covariance matrix

$\mathcal{N}(\mu, \sigma^2)$ Normal distribution with mean μ and variance σ^2

$\mathcal{N}(0, 1)$ Standard normal distribution

Functions

$f : \mathbb{A} \rightarrow \mathbb{B}$ Function f with domain \mathbb{A} and range \mathbb{B}

$f(x)$ Function f evaluated at x

$f(x; \theta)$ Function f with parameters θ evaluated at x

$f'(x)$ Derivative of function f

$\int f(x) dx$	Integral of function f with respect to x
$\min f(x)$	Minimum of function f
$\min_x f(x)$	Minimum of function f with respect to x
$\max f(x)$	Maximum of function f
$\max_x f(x)$	Maximum of function f with respect to x
$\log x$	Natural logarithm of x
$x!$	Factorial of x

Markov Decision Process

t	Time step
\mathcal{S}	State space
s_t	Observation of the state at time step t
\mathcal{A}	Action space
a_t	Action taken at time step t
$R(s, a, s')$	Reward function
r_t	Reward received at time step t
$T(s, a, s')$	Transition function
γ	Discount factor
π	Policy
G	Long-term reward
V^π	State Value function for policy π
Q^π	State-Action Value function for policy π
A^π	Advantage function for policy π

Other Symbols

\forall	For all
-----------	---------

\in	Element of
∇	Gradient
Σ	Summation symbol

Glossary

Advantage Actor-Critic Algorithm that uses both an actor (policy) and a critic (value function) to learn optimal policies by estimating the advantage of actions taken.

Algorithmic Trading Use of computer algorithms to automate trading decisions and execute trades in financial markets.

Artificial Intelligence Simulation of human intelligence processes by machines enabling them to perform tasks that typically require human intelligence, such as visual perception, speech recognition, decision-making, and language translation.

Back-testing Process of testing a trading strategy or model using historical data to evaluate its performance and effectiveness.

Bellman Equations Set of equations that describe the relationship between the value of a state or action and the values of subsequent states or actions in dynamic programming and reinforcement learning.

Black Box Term used to describe a system or model whose internal workings are not transparent or easily understood.

Deep Deterministic Policy Gradient Algorithm that uses deep neural networks to learn policies for continuous action spaces.

Deep Learning Subset of machine learning that uses neural networks with many layers to learn from large amounts of data, enabling the model to automatically learn complex patterns and representations.

Deep Neural Network Type of artificial neural network with a succession of layers of non-linear transformations capable of learning a representation of the data with various levels of abstraction.

Deep Reinforcement Learning Combination of deep learning and reinforcement learning, where deep neural networks are used to approximate the value function or policy in reinforcement learning tasks.

Efficient Frontier Set of optimal portfolios that offer the highest expected return for a given level of risk, or the lowest risk for a given level of expected return, in the context of portfolio optimisation.

Entropy Measure of uncertainty or randomness in a system, often used in the context of information theory and reinforcement learning to encourage exploration.

Explainable Artificial Intelligence Methods and techniques in the application of artificial intelligence that make the results of the models understandable by humans, providing insights into how decisions are made.

Exploitation Process of leveraging known information to make decisions or take actions that are expected to yield the highest reward.

Exploration Process of investigating and experimenting with different actions or strategies to discover their effects and improve decision-making.

Feature Importance Technique for determining the contribution of each feature in a machine learning model to its predictions, helping to identify which features are most influential.

Financial Markets Marketplaces where people trade financial securities, commodities, and other fungible items of value at low transaction costs and at prices that reflect supply and demand.

Hyper-parameter Parameter that is set before the learning process begins and controls the learning process of a machine learning model, such as learning rate, batch size, and number of layers in a neural network.

Local Interpretable Model-agnostic Explanations Technique for explaining the predictions of any machine learning model its behaviour in a local region with an interpretable model, allowing users to understand the model's decisions for a specific observation.

Machine Learning Subset of artificial intelligence that enables systems to learn from data and improve their performance over time without being explicitly programmed.

Markov Decision Process Mathematical model for sequential-decision making where the outcomes are uncertain, characterised by states, actions, rewards and a transition function.

Mean-Variance Optimisation Investment strategy that aims to construct a portfolio of assets that maximises expected return for a given level of risk, or minimises risk for a given level of expected return.

Modern Portfolio Theory Investment theory that aims to construct a portfolio of assets that maximises expected return for a given level of risk, or minimises risk for a given level of expected return, through diversification.

Portfolio Optimisation Process of selecting the best distribution of assets in a portfolio to achieve specific investment goals, such as maximising returns or minimising risk.

Proximal Policy Optimisation Algorithm that optimises policies by ensuring that updates to the policy are not too large, maintaining a balance between exploration and exploitation.

Python Interpreted, object-oriented, high-level programming language.

Reinforcement Learning Subset of machine learning where an agent learns to make decisions by taking actions in an environment to maximise cumulative reward.

Reward Function Function that defines the feedback signal received by an agent in reinforcement learning.

SHapley Additive exPlanations Method based on Shapley values and cooperative game theory for interpreting machine learning models.

Soft Actor-Critic Algorithm that combines the benefits of off-policy learning and entropy regularisation, allowing for more exploration and better stability in learning policies for continuous action spaces.

Supervised Learning Machine learning task where a model is trained on labelled data to learn a mapping from inputs to outputs.

Twin Delayed Deep Deterministic Policy Gradient Extension of Deep Deterministic Policy Gradient that addresses the overestimation bias in value function estimation by using two critic networks and delaying policy updates.

Unsupervised Learning Machine learning task where a model learns patterns or structures in unlabelled data without explicit supervision.

Acronyms

A2C Advantage Actor-Critic.

A3C Asynchronous Advantage Actor-Critic.

ADX Average Directional Index.

AI Artificial Intelligence.

AI Act Artificial Intelligence Act.

ATR Average True Range.

AUD Australian Dollar.

BCS British Computer Society.

BXY British Pound Currency Index.

CAD Canadian Dollar.

CCI Commodity Channel Index.

CHF Swiss Franc.

CNY Chinese Yuan.

DDPG Deep Deterministic Policy Gradient.

DJIA Dow Jones Industrial Average.

DL Deep Learning.

DNN Deep Neural Network.

DPG Deterministic Policy Gradient.

DQN Deep Q-Network.

DRL Deep Reinforcement Learning.

DW30 Dow Jones 30 Index.

DX Directional Movement Index.

DXY U.S. Dollar Index.

EMA Exponential Moving Average.

EU European Union.

EUR Euro.

Euro Stoxx 50 Euro Stoxx 50 Index.

EXY Euro Index.

FCA Financial Conduct Authority.

FTSE 100 Financial Times Stock Exchange 100 Index.

FVX 5-Year Treasury Yield.

GBP British Pound.

HKD Hong Kong Dollar.

HTML HyperText Markup Language.

IET The Institution of Engineering and Technology.

INR Indian Rupee.

IRX 3-Month Treasury Yield.

JPY Japanese Yen.

KRW South Korean Won.

LIME Local Interpretable Model-agnostic Explanations.

LLM Large Language Model.

LSTM Long Short-Term Memory.

MACD Moving Average Convergence Divergence.

MAPE Mean Absolute Percentage Error.

MDI Negative Directional Index.

MDP Markov Decision Process.

MiFID II Markets in Financial Instruments Directive II.

ML Machine Learning.

MPT Modern Portfolio Theory.

MSE Mean Squared Error.

MVO Mean-Variance Optimisation.

OHLCV Open, High, Low, Close, Volume.

PCA Principal Component Analysis.

PDI Positive Directional Index.

PPO Proximal Policy Optimisation.

RL Reinforcement Learning.

ROC Rate of Change.

RSI Relative Strength Index.

S&P 500 Standard and Poor's 500 Index.

SAAC Synchronous Advantage Actor Critic.

SAC Soft Actor-Critic.

SHAP SHapley Additive exPlanations.

SMA Simple Moving Average.

TD3 Twin Delayed Deep Deterministic Policy Gradient.

TNX 10-Year Treasury Yield.

TRPO Trust Region Policy Optimisation.

U.S. United States.

UK United Kingdom.

USD United States Dollar.

VIX Volatility Index.

VXD Volatility Dow Jones 30 Index.

XAI Explainable Artificial Intelligence.

Chapter 1

Introduction

Financial markets are highly complex systems influenced by numerous factors, including economic and political events, social trends and technological advancements. Moreover, their evolving and stochastic nature requires using the most advance computational developments to model the financial environment. The tasks of financial time series prediction and portfolio optimisation are considerably intricate, due to the semi-strong form of market efficiency and the high level of noise. [7]

Algorithmic trading focuses on the application of analytical methods to automatically execute trading actions based on an algorithm without human intervention. Initially, the field mainly studied the usage of a computer program to follow a predefined strategy [8]. More recently, algorithmic trading involves environment perception by learning feature representation from highly non-stationary and noisy financial time series data, and decision-making by exploring the environment and simultaneously taking actions without supervision [9].

Machine Learning (ML) has an advantage for the task due to its ability to learn from historical data and make predictions about the future state of an environment. Research

has explored the application of Deep Learning (DL) in future price prediction of financial assets [10, 11, 7, 12]. However, its main disadvantage is the inability to directly handle trading, requiring an additional step to convert the predictions into actionable strategies. In contrast, Reinforcement Learning (RL) allows the algorithm to learn a trading strategy directly from the environment, without the need for a separate step [13, 14]. In this case, there are two main approaches: first, the algorithm can learn the amount of assets to buy, sell or hold at each time step [15], or second, the algorithm can learn the optimal portfolio allocation and automatically rebalance the portfolio weights at each time step [16].

Despite the potential of RL in portfolio optimisation, its widespread adoption in the financial industry remains limited. This is primarily due to following challenges [17]:

1. difficulty in finding the appropriate algorithm with a suitable reward function and hyper-parameters to ensure efficiency and performance,
2. challenge of testing the algorithm in a real-world environment, and
3. lack of transparency of ML models, often referred to as black boxes, making it increasingly intractable to interpret the algorithm's decisions.

In recent years, the rise in popularity of Artificial Intelligence (AI) and its widespread use have led to concerns regarding its decisions due to its black box nature [18]. The concept of explainability in AI, known as Explainable Artificial Intelligence (XAI), refers to a model's ability to provide details and reasons to make itself understandable [19]. The term was first coined in 2016 to describe the need for users to effectively understand, trust and manage artificial intelligence applications [20]. The need for explainability becomes particularly relevant within the financial domain, where the regulatory framework requires transparency and accountability in automated decision-making. Various relevant applications, including volatility models [21], credit risk assessment [22] and portfolio

construction [17], have explored the concept of explainability in financial applications.

Consequently, this thesis will focus on addressing the aforementioned challenges by exploring the application of Deep Reinforcement Learning (DRL) to portfolio optimisation and implementing explainability techniques to understand model behaviour.

1.1 Objectives

The objective of this thesis is to develop an explainable DRL model for portfolio optimisation. A DRL model has the ability to leverage historical financial data to learn an investment strategy that efficiently allocates financial assets while maximising expected returns and minimising risk. Moreover, the incorporation of advanced explainability techniques enhances the interpretability and transparency of the model’s decision-making. This project aims to bridge the gap between cutting-edge machine learning techniques and their practical application in finance by addressing the challenges of algorithm selection, simulation of real-world scenarios, and black box nature of ML models.

First, DRL models, namely Advantage Actor-Critic (A2C), Proximal Policy Optimisation (PPO), Deep Deterministic Policy Gradient (DDPG), Twin Delayed Deep Deterministic Policy Gradient (TD3) and Soft Actor-Critic (SAC), will be employed to learn the optimal portfolio allocation from high-dimensional environment representations. The algorithms will be trained on historical financial data, including technical and macroeconomic indicators, with the goal of capturing the complex market dynamics. Each of the algorithms is better suited to a particular scenario, for instance, DDPG encourages maximum returns [23], while A2C reduces the variance [24] and PPO is better at balancing exploration versus exploitation [25].

Second, post-hoc explainability techniques: Feature Importance, Local Interpretable Model-agnostic Explanations (LIME) and SHapley Additive exPlanations (SHAP) will

be applied to interpret the model’s decisions. The goal of these is to understand which market conditions, represented by financial data, lead to the actions/decisions, encoded as portfolio weights.

Finally, the performance of the DRL models will be analysed in different scenarios, including the impact of a larger financial environment representation, portfolio size and asset composition. The results will be compared with traditional portfolio optimisation methods to evaluate the effectiveness of the proposed approach.

1.2 Report Structure

This report is organised into six chapters, each of which focuses on a concrete area related to the problem. Additional material, together with source code, is included in the appendices.

The current chapter, 1, presents the motivation and the objectives of this thesis. It gives an overview of the potential of DRL in portfolio optimisation and its main challenges, particularly the lack of transparency of ML models.

Chapter 2 provides an overview of the theoretical background of the project. The problem of financial portfolio optimisation is outlined and the potential of DRL in this context is discussed. The chapter provides a comprehensive background explanation of the fundamentals of Deep Learning and Reinforcement Learning, including the main algorithms (A2C, PPO, DDPG, TD3, SAC). In addition, it gives an overview of the post-hoc explainability techniques (Feature Importance, LIME and SHAP) used to interpret the model’s decisions. Finally, it includes a comprehensive in-depth literature review on the topics of ML applied to portfolio optimisation and relevant applications of explainability techniques.

The methodology, chapter 3, describes the techniques and methods used and outlines

the implementation of the proposed solution. The chapter provides a detailed explanation of the architecture and components of the proposed DRL model, including the state representation and reward function. Furthermore, given the trained algorithms, it describes the implementation of the post-hoc explainability techniques.

The results of the experiments are presented in chapter 4, which analyses and evaluates the performance of the proposed methodology, while critically discussing the findings. It provides a detailed comparison of the DRL strategies with traditional portfolio optimisation methods. Furthermore, it consists of an analysis of the model's decisions using post-hoc explainability techniques.

Chapter 5 discusses the legal, social, ethical and professional implications within the context of the project. By addressing these issues, the project aims to ensure that the proposed solution adheres to industry standards, while considering the implications of the technology.

Finally, the report concludes with a summary of the main points of the work, the contributions made, in conjunction with potential applications and future work in chapter 6.

Chapter 2

Background

This chapter provides an overview of the problem of portfolio optimisation in the financial domain, followed by a comprehensive explanation of the fundamentals of Deep Learning (DL) and Reinforcement Learning (RL), and relevant algorithms in the field of Deep Reinforcement Learning (DRL). In addition, it discusses the need for explainability in Machine Learning (ML) and the relevant post-hoc explainability techniques to achieve interpretable and transparent models. Finally, it presents the state of the art in portfolio optimisation using DRL and the recent advancements in explainability techniques in the field.

2.1 Portfolio Optimisation

Portfolio optimisation is the process of selecting optimal weights for a portfolio of assets in order to maximise expected returns for a given level of risk, or conversely, to minimise risk for a given level of expected returns [26]. In mathematical terms, the problem requires finding a solution to the specified objective function, which is typically a function of the expected returns and the risk associated with the portfolio [27]. The task becomes

further complicated if a time dimension is introduced, as the portfolio weights need to be adjusted over time to capture the changes in market conditions and asset prices [28].

2.1.1 Modern Portfolio Theory

One of the most well known traditional frameworks that formalise the problem of portfolio allocation is Markowitz's Modern Portfolio Theory (MPT), proposed in 1952 [29]. It provides a mathematical framework where investors choose optimal portfolios based on risk and return, by either minimising the risk given a specified return or, maximising the return given a specified risk [30]. The theory extends the concept of diversification by suggesting that owning financial assets of different kinds is less risky than owning assets of the same kind, due to the correlations between assets.

The main assumptions in MPT are:

- investors are risk-averse, rational, and seek to maximise return for a given risk;
- returns are normally distributed;
- markets are frictionless, meaning there are no transaction costs; and
- assets are infinitely divisible.

Under these assumptions, portfolio risk and return can be modelled as an optimisation problem. Let $\mathbf{w} = (w_1, w_2, \dots, w_N)^T$ denote the portfolio weight vector, where each w_i indicates the proportion of capital allocated to asset i , subject to the budget constraint

$$\sum_{i=1}^N w_i = 1 \tag{2.1}$$

and subject to the non-negativity constraint, meaning that short-selling is not allowed:

$$w_i \geq 0 \quad \forall i = 1, 2, \dots, N. \tag{2.2}$$

Let $\boldsymbol{\mu} = (R_1, R_2, \dots, R_N)^T$ represent the vector of expected returns, and $\Sigma \in \mathbb{R}^{N \times N}$ the covariance matrix of asset returns. The expected return of the portfolio is then given by:

$$R_p = \mathbf{w}^T \boldsymbol{\mu}, \quad (2.3)$$

and the portfolio risk is quantified by the variance of returns:

$$\sigma_p^2 = \mathbf{w}^T \Sigma \mathbf{w}. \quad (2.4)$$

This formulation provides the foundation for solving the mean-variance optimisation problem, by either:

- minimising portfolio variance σ_p^2 subject to a target expected return R_p , or
- maximising expected return R_p subject to a risk constraint σ_p .

The Markowitz mean-variance optimisation problem can be expressed as:

$$\begin{aligned} \min_{\mathbf{w}} \quad & \mathbf{w}^T \Sigma \mathbf{w} \\ \text{subject to} \quad & \begin{cases} \mathbf{w}^T \boldsymbol{\mu} = R_p \\ \mathbf{w}^T \mathbf{1} = 1 \\ \mathbf{w} \geq 0 \end{cases} \end{aligned} \quad (2.5)$$

Solving for varying levels of target return leads to a set of optimal portfolios that form the efficient frontier. It is typically visualised in a risk-return space, where the x -axis represents the risk (standard deviation) and the y -axis represents the expected return, as shown in Figure 2.1. Portfolios below the curve are sub-optimal, while those on the frontier represent the best achievable combinations of risk and return.

Despite the simplicity in the formulation of MPT, its assumptions do not reflect the

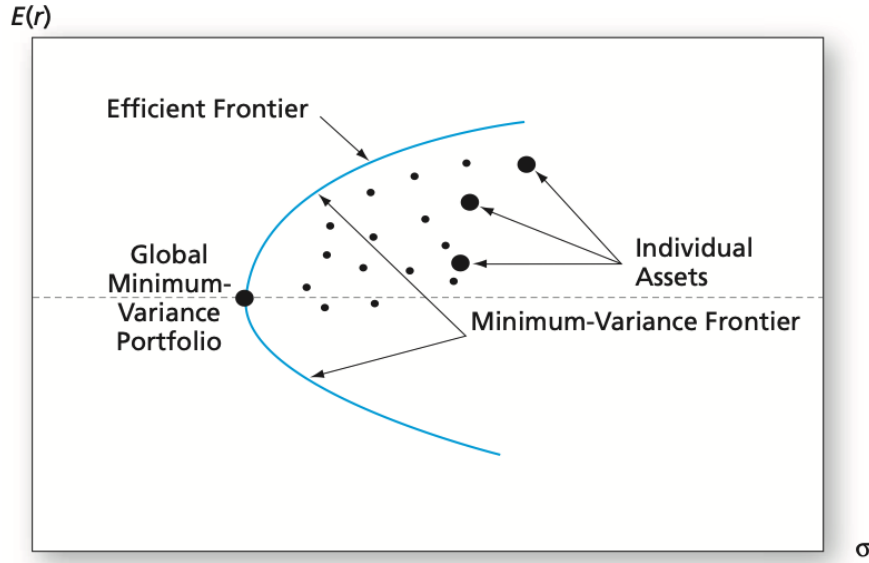


Figure 2.1: Efficient Frontier in Risk-Return Space. [1]

behaviour of real markets. Modern financial markets are dynamic, non-stationary, and feature non-linear relationships, which have driven research into other approaches better suited to capture their complexities.

2.2 Deep Reinforcement Learning

Machine Learning is a branch of Artificial Intelligence (AI) that focuses on the use of data and algorithms to imitate the way humans learn by gradually improving their accuracy over time [31]. There are three main tasks in ML [32]:

- **Supervised Learning:** Task of training a classification or regression model from labelled data, where the model learns to map inputs to outputs based on examples.
- **Unsupervised Learning:** Task of drawing inferences from datasets consisting of unlabelled data, where the model learns to identify patterns or structures in the data.

- **Reinforcement Learning (RL):** Task of training an agent to sequentially make decisions by taking actions in an environment with the goal of maximising cumulative reward, using feedback from the environment to learn an optimal strategy.

Deep Learning (DL) is a set of methods and techniques to solve such ML tasks, which focuses on the use of Deep Neural Networks (DNNs) [33], which are characterised by a succession of layers of non-linear transformations that allow the model to learn a representation of the data with various levels of abstraction. Therefore, Deep Reinforcement Learning (DRL) combines DL and RL to solve sequential decision-making problems with high-dimensionality in the environment representation. This approach has gained significant attention in recent years due to its success in various applications, including robotics [34] and game playing [35, 36].

2.2.1 Reinforcement Learning

As mentioned, RL is a type of ML that solves the problem of sequential decision-making through continuous interaction with an environment. The agent learns to take actions given an observation of the environment’s state with the goal of optimising a pre-defined notion of reward.

The RL problem can be formalised as a discrete-time stochastic control process where an agent interacts with the environment. At each time step t , the agent observes the state of the environment $s_t \in \mathcal{S}$, takes an action $a_t \in \mathcal{A}$ to obtain a reward $r_t \in \mathbb{R}$ and transition to a new state $s_{t+1} \in \mathcal{S}$, where \mathcal{S} is the state space and \mathcal{A} is the action space [32]. The agent’s interaction with the environment is visually represented in Figure 2.2.

A discrete-time stochastic control process can be formalised as a Markov Decision Process (MDP), if it fulfils the Markov Property.

Definition 2.2.1 (Markov Property). A discrete-time stochastic control process satisfies

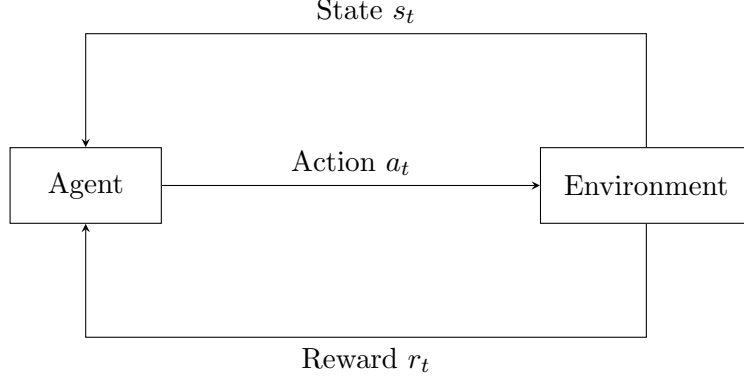


Figure 2.2: Agent interaction with environment.

the Markov Property if:

$$P(s_{t+1}|s_t, a_t) = P(s_{t+1}|s_t, a_t, s_{t-1}, a_{t-1}, \dots, s_0, a_0), \text{ and} \quad (2.6)$$

$$P(r_t|s_t, a_t) = P(r_t|s_t, a_t, s_{t-1}, a_{t-1}, \dots, s_0, a_0), \quad (2.7)$$

where $P(s_{t+1}|s_t, a_t)$ is the transition probability of moving to state s_{t+1} given the current state s_t and action a_t , and $P(r_t|s_t, a_t)$ is the reward function that defines the expected reward received at time t given the current state and action.

This implies that the state s_{t+1} at a future time step $t + 1$ only depends on the current state s_t and action a_t . Similarly, the reward r_t only depends on the current state and action and not on the history of previous states and actions. Consequently, a Markov Decision Process [37] is a discrete-time stochastic control process defined as:

Definition 2.2.2 (Markov Decision Process). An MDP is a tuple $\mathcal{M} = (\mathcal{S}, \mathcal{A}, T, R, \gamma)$, where:

- \mathcal{S} is the state space: $s_t \in \mathcal{S}$,
- \mathcal{A} is the action space: $a_t \in \mathcal{A}$,
- $T : \mathcal{S} \times \mathcal{A} \times \mathcal{S} \rightarrow [0, 1]$ is the transition function,

- $R : \mathcal{S} \times \mathcal{A} \times \mathcal{S} \rightarrow \mathcal{R}$ is the reward function, where $\mathcal{R} \in [0, R_{max}]$ is the set of all possible rewards bounded by $R_{max} \in \mathbb{R}^+$, and
- $\gamma \in [0, 1)$ is the discount factor.

At each time step, the probability of advancing to the next state s_{t+1} is given by the transition function $T(s_t, a_t, s_{t+1})$ and the reward r_t is given by the reward function $R(s_t, a_t, s_{t+1})$. This can be visualised in Figure 2.3.

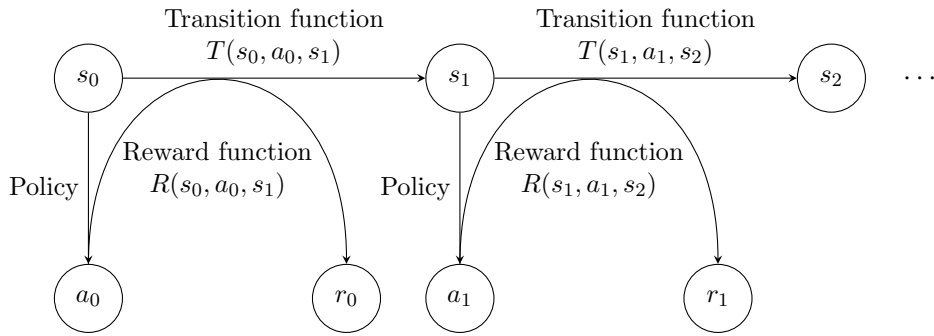


Figure 2.3: Markov Decision Process with policy, transition, and reward functions.

The agent's objective is to learn a policy $\pi : \mathcal{S} \rightarrow \mathcal{A}$ that maps states to actions that maximises the expected cumulative reward over time. Policies can be categorised as:

- deterministic: $\pi(s) : \mathcal{S} \rightarrow \mathcal{A}$, at a given state s , the policy specifies the only available action to take, or
- stochastic: $\pi(s, a) : \mathcal{S} \times \mathcal{A} \rightarrow [0, 1]$, at a given state s , the policy specifies the probability of taking action a .

The goal of the agent is to maximise the cumulative long-term reward G_t , which is defined as the sum of discounted rewards over time:

$$G_t = r_{t+1} + \gamma r_{t+2} + \gamma^2 r_{t+3} + \dots = r_{t+1} + \gamma G_{t+1}, \quad (2.8)$$

where $\gamma \in [0, 1)$ is the discount factor and is used to balance the importance between immediate and future rewards. If the discount factor is set to 0, the agent is myopic and only maximises the immediate reward; whereas, as γ approaches 1, the agent becomes more far-sighted and places greater importance on future rewards.

The expected cumulative reward is defined as the state value function $V^\pi(s) : \mathcal{S} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$, which is the expected return when starting from state s and following policy π :

$$V^\pi(s) = \mathbb{E}_\pi [G_t | s_t = s], \quad (2.9)$$

where \mathbb{E}_π denotes the expectation over the policy π .

Similarly, the state-action value function $Q^\pi(s, a) : \mathcal{S} \times \mathcal{A} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is defined as the expected return when starting from state s , taking action a , and then following policy π :

$$Q^\pi(s, a) = \mathbb{E}_\pi [G_t | s_t = s, a_t = a]. \quad (2.10)$$

The state value function $V^\pi(s)$ and the state-action value function $Q^\pi(s, a)$ are related as follows:

$$V^\pi(s) = \sum_{a \in \mathcal{A}} \pi(a|s) Q^\pi(s, a) = \mathbb{E}_\pi [Q^\pi(s, a) | s_t = s]. \quad (2.11)$$

Moreover, the advantage function $A^\pi(s, a)$ combines both the state value function $V^\pi(s)$ and the state-action value function $Q^\pi(s, a)$, and is defined as:

$$A^\pi(s, a) = Q^\pi(s, a) - V^\pi(s). \quad (2.12)$$

A policy π is said to be optimal if the policy's value function is the optimal value function

of the MDP, defined as:

$$V^*(s) = \max_{\pi'} V^{\pi'}(s), \forall s \in \mathcal{S}, \quad (2.13)$$

$$Q^*(s, a) = \max_{\pi'} Q^{\pi'}(s, a), \forall s \in \mathcal{S}, a \in \mathcal{A}. \quad (2.14)$$

The optimal policy π^* is:

$$\pi^*(s) = \arg \max_{a \in \mathcal{A}} Q^*(s, a) \quad (2.15)$$

As a result, the optimal policy is the greedy policy that performs the optimal actions at each time step as determined by the optimal value functions. This framework enables the agent to determine optimal actions that maximise long-term returns by evaluating immediate information, without requiring knowledge of the values of future states and actions.

The Bellman equations [38] provide a recursive relation between the value functions in terms of the future state/action values. There are four main Bellman equations, classified in two groups: the Bellman expectation equations and the Bellman optimality equations. The Bellman expectation equations are defined as follows:

$$V^\pi(s) = \sum_{a \in \mathcal{A}} \pi(a | s) \sum_{s' \in \mathcal{S}} T(s, a, s') [R(s, a, s') + \gamma V^\pi(s')], \quad (2.16)$$

$$Q^\pi(s, a) = \sum_{s' \in \mathcal{S}} T(s, a, s') \left[R(s, a, s') + \gamma \sum_{a' \in \mathcal{A}} \pi(a' | s') Q^\pi(s', a') \right], \quad (2.17)$$

and the Bellman optimality equations are defined as:

$$V^*(s) = \max_{a \in \mathcal{A}} \sum_{s' \in \mathcal{S}} T(s, a, s') [R(s, a, s') + \gamma V^*(s')], \quad (2.18)$$

$$Q^*(s, a) = \sum_{s' \in \mathcal{S}} T(s, a, s') \left[R(s, a, s') + \gamma \max_{a' \in \mathcal{A}} Q^*(s', a') \right]. \quad (2.19)$$

Although explicitly solving the Bellman equations would lead to the optimal policy, it is often intractable due to the size of the state and action spaces. Therefore, in RL algorithms, the goal is to learn an approximation of the optimal value functions, which can be used to derive the optimal policy.

Another problem that arises is that of balancing exploration and exploitation [39]. Theoretically, following the greedy action yields the optimal policy, but this is only true if all the action values are known. In practice, the agent at each time step and given state chooses either an action whose value is higher, thus exploiting its current knowledge, or picks an action at random, thus exploring the environment and gaining more information about the state-action space, leading to potentially discovering a better action than the greedy one.

2.2.2 Deep Reinforcement Learning Algorithms

A Reinforcement Learning (RL) agent includes one or more of the following components [32]:

- a representation of the value function that provides a prediction of the value of each state or state-action pair,
- a direct representation of the policy, or
- a model of the environment, consisting of estimates of transition and reward functions.

Depending on the components, the main RL paradigms are:

- **Model-free** algorithms do not learn a representation of the environment, but focus on the value function, the policy or both. These algorithms can be further divided into:

- **Value-based** algorithms learn an approximation of the value function, which is used to compute the state or state-action values. The policy is not learnt explicitly but can be derived from the value function. Examples include Deep Q-Network (DQN) [40] and C51 [41].
- **Policy-based** algorithms learn a direct representation of the policy, which is used to select actions. Advantage Actor-Critic (A2C), Asynchronous Advantage Actor-Critic (A3C) [24] and Proximal Policy Optimisation (PPO) [25] are examples of policy-based algorithms.
- **Actor-Critic** algorithms combine both value-based and policy-based approaches, where the actor learns the policy and the critic learns the value function. The critic provides feedback to the actor to improve the policy. Some examples are Deep Deterministic Policy Gradient (DDPG) [23], Twin Delayed Deep Deterministic Policy Gradient (TD3) [42], and Soft Actor-Critic (SAC) [43].
- **Model-based** algorithms include a model of the environment, which can be used to simulate future states and rewards. For example, World Models [44] learns a model of the environment and AlphaZero [45] has a representation of the model.

The taxonomy of the RL algorithms is shown in Figure 2.4.

The full potential of RL algorithms is achieved when leveraging the power of Deep Learning to solve dynamic stochastic control problems that have high-dimensionality in their representation of the state and action spaces. DRL algorithms use Deep Neural Networks to approximate the value functions, or use gradient ascent to find the optimal policy parameters. This thesis will focus on policy-based and actor-critic algorithms. The pseudo-code for the algorithms is provided in Appendix A.1.

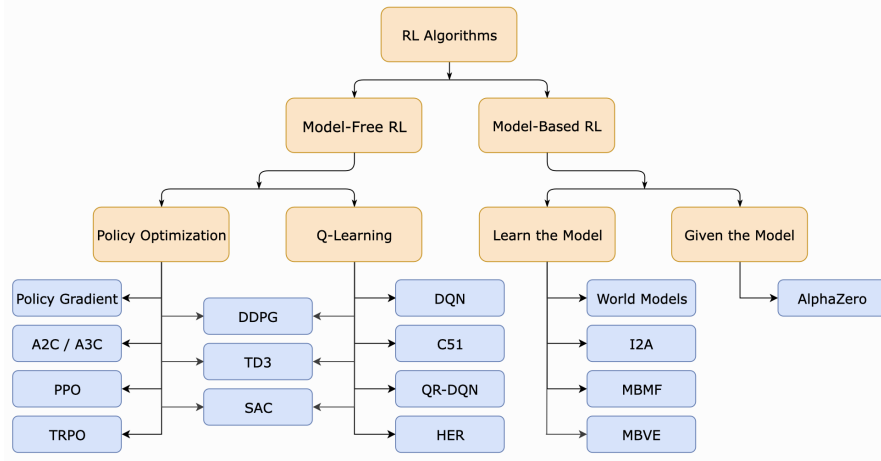


Figure 2.4: Taxonomy of Reinforcement Learning Algorithms [2].

2.2.2.1 Advantage Actor-Critic (A2C)

The Advantage Actor-Critic (A2C) algorithm was developed by Mnih et al. (2016) [24]. The main contribution is the usage of the advantage function to address the variance issues present in policy gradient methods. The A2C is the synchronous version of A3C, and is preferred due to its better performance in terms of training time and cost-effectiveness [46].

The algorithm consists of a dual-network architecture, where the actor network learns a stochastic policy $\pi(a_t | s_t; \theta)$ and the critic network learns the value function $V(s_t; \theta_v)$. The policy and the value function are updated after every t_{max} actions or when a terminal state is reached. The advantage function is estimated as follows:

$$A(s_t, a_t; \theta, \theta_v) = \sum_{i=0}^{k-1} \gamma^i r_{t+i} + \gamma^k V(s_{t+k}; \theta_v) - V(s_t; \theta_v), \quad (2.20)$$

where k represents the n -step return and is upper-bounded by the maximum number of steps t_{max} , and γ is the discount factor. The algorithm's objective function is defined

as:

$$J(\theta, \theta_v) = \mathbb{E}_\pi [\log \pi(a_t | s_t; \theta) A(s_t, a_t; \theta, \theta_v)]. \quad (2.21)$$

2.2.2.2 Proximal Policy Optimisation (PPO)

Proximal Policy Optimisation (PPO) is a policy gradient algorithm that was introduced by Schulman et al. (2017) [25] with the objective of constraining policy updates. The algorithm balances sufficiently large updates in order to improve the policy, while avoiding excessively large changes that could hinder performance.

PPO improves the performance of Trust Region Policy Optimisation (TRPO) [47] by using a clipped surrogate objective function that ensures that the probability ratio r_t is bounded within a range of $[1 - \epsilon, 1 + \epsilon]$, where ϵ is a hyperparameter that controls the clipping range. The objective function is defined as:

$$L_t^{CLIP}(\theta) = \mathbb{E}_t \left[\min \left(r_t(\theta) \hat{A}_t, \text{clip}(r_t(\theta), 1 - \epsilon, 1 + \epsilon) \hat{A}_t \right) \right], \quad (2.22)$$

where

$$r_t(\theta) = \frac{\pi_\theta(a_t | s_t)}{\pi_{\theta_{old}}(a_t | s_t)} \quad (2.23)$$

is the probability ratio between the current policy π_θ and the old policy $\pi_{\theta_{old}}$.

Another improvement with respect to TRPO is the use of simple first-order optimisation methods as opposed to the second-order methods used in TRPO. Consequently, PPO maintains the stability and reliability of other trust-region methods, while being easier to implement and more computationally efficient.

2.2.2.3 Deep Deterministic Policy Gradient (DDPG)

Deep Deterministic Policy Gradient (DDPG) is an off-policy actor-critic algorithm that was introduced by Lillicrap et al. (2015) [23]. The algorithm arises to solve the challenges of applying Deep Q-Network [40] to continuous action spaces by applying Deterministic Policy Gradient (DPG), which enables the efficient computation of the policy gradient without the need to integrate over the action space.

The algorithm uses the following networks: the actor network $\mu(s_t; \theta_\mu)$, which learns a deterministic policy, the critic network $Q(s_t, a_t; \theta_Q)$, which learns the state-action value function, and the actor's and critic's target networks. The actor network is updated using DPG:

$$\nabla_{\theta_\mu} J \approx \mathbb{E}_{s_t \sim \mathcal{D}} [\nabla_a Q(s_t, a_t; \theta_Q) \nabla_{\theta_\mu} \mu(s_t; \theta_\mu)] , \quad (2.24)$$

where \mathcal{D} is the replay buffer that stores the agent's experiences, θ_μ are the parameters of the actor network, and θ_Q are the parameters of the critic network, and the critic network is updated using the Bellman equations:

$$\nabla_{\theta_Q} J \approx \mathbb{E}_{s_t \sim \mathcal{D}} [(r_t + \gamma Q(s_{t+1}, \mu(s_{t+1}; \theta_\mu); \theta'_Q) - Q(s_t, a_t; \theta_Q)) \nabla_{\theta_Q} Q(s_t, a_t; \theta_Q)] , \quad (2.25)$$

where θ'_Q are the parameters of the target critic network.

From Deep Q-Network, the algorithm incorporates a replay buffer to store the agent's experiences, which allows the agent to learn from past experiences and improve its performance over time. Moreover, DDPG incorporates noise, typically Ornstein-Uhlenbeck noise [48], to the actions taken by the actor network to encourage exploration of the action space.

2.2.2.4 Twin Delayed Deep Deterministic Policy Gradient (TD3)

Twin Delayed Deep Deterministic Policy Gradient (TD3) is an extension of DDPG introduced by Fujimoto et al. (2018) [42]. The proposal addresses the hyper-parameter sensitivity and overestimation bias present in the critic network of DDPG by proposing three main improvements. First, clipped double Q-learning employs two critic networks and uses their minimum value to compute the target value for the actor network, which reduces the overestimation bias. Second, the authors introduce delayed policy updates, where the actor and critic networks' updates are performed at different frequencies; the critic networks are updated every time step, whereas the actor and target networks are updated less frequently. The main benefit is that it allows the critic to improve the accuracy of the value estimates before the actor updates its policy. Third, to perform target policy smoothing, the algorithm adds noise to the target action during the critic updates to smooth the value function over similar actions, resulting in a lower impact of approximation errors and more robust policies.

2.2.2.5 Soft Actor-Critic (SAC)

Soft Actor-Critic (SAC), despite being an off-policy actor-critic algorithm, represents a paradigm shift in RL. The algorithm was presented by Haarnoja et al. (2018) [43] and is based on the maximum entropy framework, which aims to maximise both the expected return and the entropy of the policy, encouraging the agent to succeed at the task while acting as randomly as possible.

The algorithm uses two critic networks to estimate the state-action value function, and a stochastic actor network that learns a policy that maximises the expected return while also maximising the entropy of the policy. The objective function for the actor network,

which is updated using the policy gradient method, is defined as:

$$J(\theta) = \mathbb{E}_{s_t \sim \mathcal{D}} [\mathbb{E}_{a_t \sim \pi_\theta} [\alpha \log \pi_\theta(a_t | s_t) + Q(s_t, a_t; \theta_Q)]] , \quad (2.26)$$

where α is a temperature parameter that controls the trade-off between exploration and exploitation, and \mathcal{D} is the replay buffer that stores the agent’s experiences. The critic networks are updated using the Bellman equations:

$$J(\theta_Q) = \mathbb{E}_{s_t \sim \mathcal{D}} \left[\left(r_t + \gamma \min_{i=1,2} Q(s_{t+1}, \mu_\theta(s_{t+1}) + \mathcal{N}(0, \sigma); \theta_{Q_i}) - Q(s_t, a_t; \theta_{Q_i}) \right)^2 \right] , \quad (2.27)$$

where $\mathcal{N}(0, \sigma)$ is the noise added to the action to encourage exploration, and θ_{Q_i} are the parameters of the two critic networks. The temperature parameter α is learned automatically by maximising the entropy of the policy, which is defined as:

$$J(\alpha) = \mathbb{E}_{s_t \sim \mathcal{D}} [\alpha \log \pi_\theta(a_t | s_t)] . \quad (2.28)$$

This parameter is used to control the trade-off between the entropy and the reward terms, effectively controlling the stochasticity of the policy.

2.2.2.6 Algorithm comparison

The five algorithms presented above are among the most widely used in the field of DRL, each addressing specific challenges in policy estimation and value function approximation. A2C is an on-policy actor-critic method that reduces variance through advantage estimation, while PPO changed on-policy learning by introducing a clipped surrogate objective that ensures stable policy updates. Although DDPG pioneered continuous control through deterministic policies, TD3 addressed the overestimation bias of its predecessor via twin critics and delayed updates. SAC revolutionised the field of DRL by

incorporating maximum entropy principles.

An overview of the algorithms and their key characteristics is summarised in Table 2.1.

Table 2.1: Comparison of Deep Reinforcement Learning Algorithms.

Algorithm	Policy Type	On/Off Policy	Key Idea
A2C	Stochastic	On	Advantage Function Estimation
PPO	Stochastic	On	Clipped Policy Updates
DDPG	Deterministic	Off	Actor-Critic + Replay buffer
TD3	Deterministic	Off	Double critics + Delayed updates
SAC	Stochastic	Off	Max-entropy RL

2.3 Explainable Artificial Intelligence

Explainable Artificial Intelligence (XAI) refers to a set of processes, methods and techniques that enable human users to comprehend and trust the outcomes and decisions made by Artificial Intelligence (AI) systems. The goal is to make AI algorithms more transparent, interpretable, and accountable, allowing end-users to understand the outputs of the models. This is particularly important in Deep Learning (DL) where the models are often considered black boxes due to their complexity, non-linearity and high-dimensionality, making it difficult to understand how they arrive at their decisions. With explainable systems, the benefits are numerous ranging from informed decision making to increased user adoption and better governance [49].

Although there are many possible classifications of XAI methods, they can be broadly categorised into two main categories. First, transparent algorithms are inherently understandable and interpretable, such as linear regression, decision trees and rule-based systems. Second, post-hoc explanations are methods that require the usage of an ad-

ditional algorithm to clarify the decisions made by a model. Examples include saliency maps [50] and interaction data [51].

Another classification relates to whether the explanation method depends on the type of model it is being applied to. On the one hand, model-agnostic methods work with any model regardless of its internal architecture, effectively treating all types of models as black boxes. The analysis is conducted by understanding the input-output behaviour and how small perturbations to the input impact the output. These methods can be further sub-divided between global explanations, which provide an understanding of the model’s overall behaviour across an entire dataset, and local techniques, which focus on explaining the individual predictions. SHapley Additive exPlanations (SHAP) [52] is an example of a global method, while Local Interpretable Model-agnostic Explanations (LIME) [53] provides local interpretations. On the other hand, model-specific methods are tailored to a particular architecture and leverage its components as part of the explanation process. In the case of neural networks, this can be achieved by analysing the learned features or by incorporating attention mechanisms [54].

The taxonomy of the XAI methods is shown in Figure 2.5.

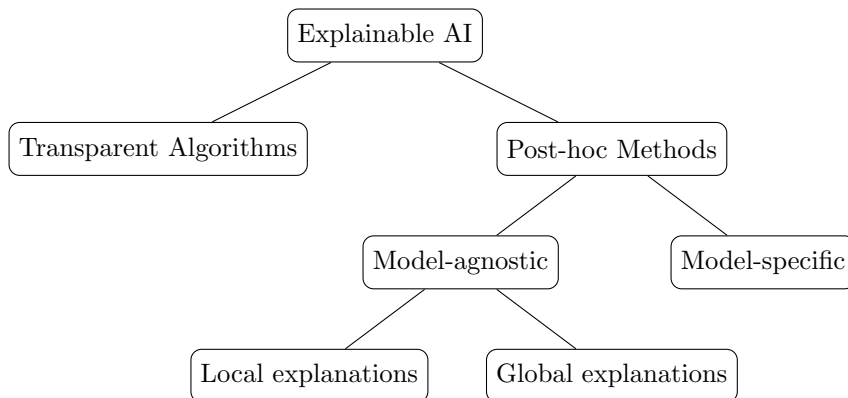


Figure 2.5: Taxonomy of Explainable Artificial Intelligence Methods [3].

2.3.1 Feature Importance

Feature Importance is a global model-specific method that quantifies the contribution of each feature to the model’s predictions. In particular, permutation feature importance measures the contribution of each feature by evaluating the model’s performance on the original dataset and comparing it to the performance on a permuted version of the dataset, where a specific feature is randomly shuffled [55]. The process allows to understand how much the model’s relies on a particular feature for its prediction, by measuring the decrease in predictive power if the input feature’s values vary.

An alternative method, well-suited for tree-based models, is impurity-based feature importance. Random forests split their features with the goal of reducing an impurity measure at each node, normally Gini impurity for classification tasks or Mean Squared Error (MSE) for regression [56]. As such, a variable responsible for a split with a large decrease in impurity is considered important [57]. As a result, the impurity importance of a feature is the sum of all impurity reductions across all nodes and trees in the forest where the particular feature was used to split the data. While powerful, this method suffers from bias towards features with high cardinality and they do not necessarily reflect the ability of a feature to make useful predictions on the test set, given that importance is computed on the training set [55].

2.3.2 Local Interpretable Model-agnostic Explanations

Local Interpretable Model-agnostic Explanations (LIME) is a model-agnostic explanation method that interprets individual predictions of a Machine Learning model by analysing the model locally around the prediction of interest. The method, introduced by Ribeiro et al. (2016) [53], utilises the black box model to understand what happens to the outputs when the input data is slightly modified, then fits a simpler, interpretable

model to the perturbed data to approximate its behaviour in that local region.

For a more rigorous definition, let $\mathcal{L}(f, g, \pi_x)$ be a measure of how unfaithful an explanation model g is in approximating the model $f : \mathbb{R}^d \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ in the neighbourhood of the instance x defined as π_x . The goal is to find an interpretable model $g \in G$, where G is the set of all interpretable models, that minimises the following objective function:

$$\xi(x) = \mathcal{L}(f, g, \pi_x) + \Omega(g) \quad (2.29)$$

where $\Omega(g)$ is a regularisation term that penalises the complexity of the explanation model g . This encourages interpretability, meaning a qualitative understanding of the relationship between inputs and outputs, and promotes local fidelity, ensuring the explanation accurately approximates the model's behaviour in that region.

The method works as follows:

- **Instance Selection:** Start with a specific prediction instance that requires explanation.
- **Perturbation:** Generate synthetic data points by perturbing the original instance.
- **Model Querying:** Obtain predictions from the black box model for these perturbed instances.
- **Weighting:** Assign weights to the synthetic data points based on their proximity to the original instance.
- **Surrogate Training:** Train a simple, interpretable model (typically linear regression) on the weighted synthetic dataset.
- **Explanation:** Use the surrogate model to explain the original prediction by interpreting its coefficients or structure.

Its main advantages are its ability to work across different types of data and models, due to its model-agnostic nature, and the fact that its explanations are human-friendly and include a fidelity measure that indicates how well the explanation approximates the black box model’s local behaviour. Nonetheless, the method offers only local explanations, which may not generalise well to the entire dataset; it relies on the choice of neighbourhood; and the complexity of the surrogate model needs to be defined in advance and can compromise the interpretability of the explanation [3].

2.3.3 Shapley Additive Explanations

Another model-agnostic technique is SHapley Additive exPlanations (SHAP), which was introduced by Lundberg and Lee (2017) [52]. The method is based on cooperative game theory and the concept of Shapley values [58].

The Shapley value arises in cooperative game theory to answer the question of how to fairly distribute the contribution of each player in a coalition. In this framework, a coalitional game is represented as a tuple (N, v) , where $N = \{1, 2, \dots, n\}$ is the set of players and $v : 2^N \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is the characteristic function that assigns a value $v(S)$ to each possible coalition $S \subseteq N$, with the convention that $v(\emptyset) = 0$. The characteristic function $v(S)$ represents the total value that coalition S can achieve through cooperation.

Mathematically, the Shapley value for a feature i is defined as:

$$\phi_i = \sum_{S \subseteq N \setminus \{i\}} \frac{|S|!(|N| - |S| - 1)!}{|N|!} [v_{S \cup \{i\}}(x_{S \cup \{i\}}) - v_S(x_S)] \quad (2.30)$$

where $S \subseteq N$ is a subset of all features N , $v_{S \cup \{i\}}$ is marginal contribution of player i to coalition S , and v_S is the value of coalition S without player i . This formula can be understood as computing the weighted average of marginal contributions of feature i across all possible coalitions.

The advantage of Shapley values is that it is the only attribution method that results in a fair payout. In particular, it satisfies the four fundamental properties that define a fair allocation:

- **Efficiency:** The sum of all Shapley values equals the value of the grand coalition:

$$\sum_{i \in N} \phi_i = v(N)$$

- **Symmetry:** The contributions of two players i and j should be equal if they make identical marginal contributions to all possible coalitions:

$$v(S \cup \{i\}) = v(S \cup \{j\}), \forall S \subseteq N \setminus \{i, j\} \implies \phi_i = \phi_j$$

- **Dummy:** If a player contributes nothing to any coalition they join, their Shapley value should be zero:

$$v(S \cup \{i\}) = v(S), \forall S \subseteq N \setminus \{i\} \implies \phi_i = 0$$

- **Additivity:** For two games (N, v_1) and (N, v_2) , the Shapley value of the combined game $(N, v_1 + v_2)$ equals the sum of individual Shapley values:

$$\phi_i(v_1 + v_2) = \phi_i(v_1) + \phi_i(v_2)$$

The algorithm for approximating Shapley values is outlined in Appendix 6. However, the method is computationally expensive, as it requires evaluating the model for all possible coalitions of features.

The use of Shapley values in ML was not introduced until 2011, when Štrumbelj and Kononenko [59] proposed it as a method for explaining black box regression models.

However, it was popularised in 2017 by Lundberg and Lee [52], who introduced the SHAP framework. Although their proposal relies on the principles of Shapley values, their main contribution is to represent the Shapley value as an additive feature attribution method given as:

$$g(\mathbf{z}') = \phi_0 + \sum_{j=1}^M \phi_j z'_j \quad (2.31)$$

where g is the explanation model, $\mathbf{z}' \in \{0, 1\}^M$ is the coalition vector, M is the maximum coalition size, ϕ_0 is the bias term, and ϕ_j is the feature attribution for feature j .

2.3.3.1 KernelSHAP

The KernelSHAP algorithm builds on the SHAP framework by using a kernel-based approach to estimate Shapley values. It approximates the Shapley value by sampling different coalitions and using a weighted linear regression model to fit the contributions of each feature. The method relies on not all coalitions contributing equally to the final Shapley value and as such uses kernel weights to identify the most important coalitions. The main steps of the KernelSHAP algorithm are:

- sample a set of coalitions from the feature space: $\mathbf{z}'_k \in \{0, 1\}^M, k \in \{1, \dots, K\}$, where K is the total number of samples;
- for each coalition \mathbf{z}'_k , compute the model's prediction by first converting \mathbf{z}'_k to the original feature space and then applying the model $\hat{f} : \hat{f}(h_{\mathbf{x}}(\mathbf{z}'_k))$;
- compute the weight for each coalition with the SHAP kernel: $\pi_{\mathbf{x}}(\mathbf{z}')$;
- fit a weighted linear regression model to the sampled coalitions and their corresponding predictions; and
- return Shapley values ϕ_k as the coefficients of the fitted model.

The sample coalitions are generated by randomly selecting subsets of the features, or equivalently, a vector of 0s and 1s indicating whether a feature is included in the coalition. The sampled coalitions represent the dataset for the regression model whose target is the prediction for a coalition. However, the sampled coalitions are not on the target feature space and, as such, it is necessary to implement another function $h_{\mathbf{x}}(\mathbf{z}') = \mathbf{z}$ that maps the sampled coalitions to the original feature space. In the case of tabular data, this is done by replacing the features that are not included in the coalition with their mean value or a random sample from its possible values. As a result, sampling from the marginal distribution ignores the dependence structure between features.

Although there are similarities between KernelSHAP and LIME, their main difference lies in feature weighting in the regression model. The SHAP weighting assumes that small and large coalitions provide the most information about its isolated effects or its total effects, respectively, whereas coalitions with half the features add little information about a specific feature's contributions [52]. The proposed weighting function for KernelSHAP is:

$$\pi_{\mathbf{x}}(\mathbf{z}') = \frac{(M - 1)}{\binom{M}{|\mathbf{z}'|} |\mathbf{z}'| (M - |\mathbf{z}'|)}, \quad (2.32)$$

where M is the maximum coalition size and $|\mathbf{z}'|$ is the number of features in the coalition \mathbf{z}' .

In addition, since the coalitions with the smallest and the largest number of features are the most informative, the sampling process is biased towards coalitions of size 1 and $M - 1$, resulting in $2M$ possible coalitions. Then, the remaining budget $K - 2M$ is used to sample coalitions of size 2 to $M - 2$. This process continues until the sampled coalitions reach the desired number of samples.

Consequently, given the samples, the KernelSHAP algorithm fits a weighted linear re-

gression model to estimate the Shapley values. The model is defined as:

$$g(\mathbf{z}') = \phi_0 + \sum_{j=1}^M \phi_j z'_j. \quad (2.33)$$

The goal is to minimise the following loss function:

$$\mathcal{L}(\hat{f}, g, \pi_{\mathbf{x}}) = \sum_{\mathbf{z}' \in \mathbf{Z}} \left[\hat{f}(h_{\mathbf{x}}(\mathbf{z}')) - g(\mathbf{z}') \right]^2 \pi_{\mathbf{x}}(\mathbf{z}'), \quad (2.34)$$

where \mathbf{Z} is the dataset of sampled coalitions.

2.3.3.2 TreeSHAP

A variant of their original proposal is TreeSHAP [60], designed specifically for tree-based models. In this case, the method is model-specific and by leveraging the structure of the tree, it improves the computational efficiency by reducing computation time from exponential for KernelSHAP to polynomial.

The method works by exploiting the tree structure and the main steps of the algorithm are as follows.

- For each feature, traverse the tree and compute the contribution of the feature to the prediction at each node.
- For each node, compute the contribution of the feature to the prediction by considering the difference between the prediction at the node and the prediction at the parent node.
- For each feature, compute the Shapley value by averaging the contributions across all nodes in the tree.

2.4 State of the Art of Deep Learning and Explainability for Portfolio Optimisation

The emergence of Machine Learning (ML) and its rise in popularity have led to a new research direction in various financial applications, due to its ability to learn complex patterns from high-dimensional data and adapt to changing market conditions. Particularly, the main approaches in the financial field include the use of Deep Learning and Reinforcement Learning (RL) for price trend prediction [61] and portfolio optimisation [62].

The topic of portfolio optimisation with multiple risky financial assets has been extensively studied and it still poses a challenging task due to the complex and stochastic nature of financial markets. Traditional approaches to portfolio optimisation, such as Mean-Variance Optimisation (MVO) [29], have been widely used, but often rely on assumptions that do not hold in practice, such as the normality of returns and the stability of the covariance matrix. As a result, these methods can lead to suboptimal portfolios and poor performance in real-world scenarios.

The use of Deep Learning architectures is particularly prominent in the context of price prediction, where deep neural networks are employed to learn complex patterns in historical price data. For instance, Long Short-Term Memory (LSTM) architectures are particularly well-suited for financial time series forecasting due to their ability to capture long-term dependencies and temporal patterns in the data [63]. The performance of these architectures can lead to a Mean Absolute Percentage Error (MAPE) as low as 2.72%, as demonstrated by Chaudhary (2025) [64]. Shen et al. (2020) [7] also propose an LSTM architecture for short-term trend prediction with the main contribution being the feature engineering process. The proposal incorporates feature extension, followed by recursive feature elimination and, finally, performs Principal Component Analysis

(PCA) to reduce the dimensionality of the input data for the LSTM model. The use of PCA improves the training time of the architecture by 36.8% [7].

Ensemble methods are also prominent for price prediction, where techniques such as stacking, blending, boosting and bagging are employed to combine the predictions of multiple models. For example, Nti et al. (2020) [11] explore twenty-five different ensemble classifiers and regressors based on Decision Trees, Support Vector Machines and Neural Networks. Their research shows that although stacking and boosting ensemble algorithms provide better results in terms of accuracy, they are the most computationally expensive.

When it comes to portfolio optimisation, DRL algorithms are particularly better suited as they address the sequential decision making nature of portfolio management. Unlike traditional Supervised Learning approaches that require labelled data, DRL enables agents to learn optimal investment strategies through direct interaction with market environments. This paradigm allows for the dynamic adjustment of portfolio weights without the need for predefined rules, making it suitable to capture market non-linearities and adapt to changing conditions. There are numerous DRL algorithms, as outlined in Section 2.2.2, with each particularly befitting to different aspects of the portfolio management process.

Liu et al. (2018) [15] propose the use of DDPG for profitable stock trading, where the agent learns to buy, hold and sell stocks based on the historical price data with the goal of maximising the investment return. Their proposal outperforms the Dow Jones Industrial Average (DJIA) and the min-variance portfolio allocation strategies, achieving an annualised return of 25.86% and a Sharpe ratio of 1.79. Their work is further extended by proposing a Python library, FinRL, which provides a comprehensive framework for developing and evaluating DRL algorithms in the context of financial trading [65]. Although the library provides implementation for numerous DRL algorithms in-

cluding DQN, A2C and SAC, they only evaluate the performance of TD3 and DDPG on the Dow Jones Industrial Average (DJIA) constituents for the tasks of multiple stock trading and portfolio allocation. Notwithstanding, an interesting aspect of their work is the incorporation of the turbulence index, that measures extreme asset price fluctuations, to control portfolio risk. Beyond traditional assets, optimal portfolio allocation has also been explored in the context of cryptocurrencies [66] and future contracts [67].

Despite the significant applications of DRL in portfolio optimisation, the field still faces significant challenges that prevent its widespread adoption. When it comes to market conditions, identifying the correct objective function that guarantees both efficiency and accuracy remains an open research question. Finally, one of the most significant concerns is the lack of transparency of ML models. If there is to be general acceptance of these models in the financial field, great strides must be made in the area of explainability.

Barriedo et al. (2020) [19] provide a comprehensive overview of Explainable Artificial Intelligence (XAI) methods and their need in different fields. Given the regulatory requirements, it is crucial for financial institutions to adopt techniques that enhance the interpretability and traceability of ML models [68].

The application of XAI methods has gained traction in the financial domain, with notable use cases including stock market trend prediction [69] and auditing [70]. However, despite examples of XAI methods in finance, there is still a lack of research in DRL. An interesting study was conducted by González Cortés et al. (2024) [17], whose authors address the black box behaviour of DRL models by proposing an intrinsically transparent algorithm. They use Advantage Actor-Critic (A2C) ¹ enhanced with an attention-layered LSTM to determine the importance of the input features. Although their results show an improvement in performance compared against two variants of the Markowitz model, their implementation does not scale well with the number of assets in

¹In the paper [17], they refer to A2C as Synchronous Advantage Actor Critic (SAAC)

the portfolio, as the attention mechanism is independent for each stock.

Another recent study by de-la-Rica-Escudero et al. (2025) [71] proposes post-hoc explainability methods to interpret the decisions of PPO agent optimised for portfolio management. They implement three model-agnostic explainability techniques: SHAP, LIME and feature importance analysis. Despite their proposal’s ability to provide insights into the model’s decision-making process, they do not use the model prediction function directly but instead implement a surrogate model to approximate the decision boundary of the PPO agent, effectively adding an additional layer to the model.

Given the lack of research in the area of explainability for DRL models that perform automated portfolio allocation and the current limitations of existing methods, this thesis proposes to provide a comprehensive study of DRL techniques tailored for portfolio optimisation in financial markets, by exploring the potential of five prominent algorithms (A2C, PPO, DDPG, TD3 and SAC) across various market conditions and asset classes. Moreover, due to the complex and hidden nature of those algorithms, their decision-making process will be explained using XAI methods. The objective is to bridge the gap between the performance of DRL and algorithmic transparency.

Chapter 3

Methodology

This chapter covers the methodology and framework established to provide an explainable Deep Reinforcement Learning (DRL) model capable of optimising a portfolio of financial assets. The chapter is structured as follows: first, it describes the architecture and components of the proposed DRL model, including the state representation, reward function and training process and second, it outlines the implementation of the explainability techniques used to interpret the model's decisions.

3.1 Problem Definition

The problem of portfolio optimisation is the task of finding an optimal allocation of financial assets in a portfolio to maximise expected returns while minimising risk. Thus, it is necessary to decide how to rebalance the portfolio at each time step in a highly stochastic and complex financial market. This can be formulated using a Markov Decision Process (MDP) framework, where the agent interacts with the environment by deciding the optimal allocation based on the state of the environment at each time step to maximise the expected cumulative reward over time. Deep Reinforcement Learning

(DRL) gives the agent the ability to learn the optimal policy directly from the environment by taking actions and receiving rewards.

3.2 Markov Decision Process Model

Due to the dynamic, stochastic and interactive nature of financial markets, a Markov Decision Process is a suitable framework to model the problem. The main elements of the MDP model are defined as follows:

- state space \mathcal{S} ,
- action space \mathcal{A} ,
- reward function $R : \mathcal{S} \times \mathcal{A} \times \mathcal{S} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$,
- transition function $T : \mathcal{S} \times \mathcal{A} \rightarrow \mathcal{S}$, and
- discount factor $\gamma \in [0, 1)$.

The state space \mathcal{S} is a vector representation of the financial environment. For a portfolio of D assets, the features that describe the state include asset prices, technical indicators and macroeconomic indicators.

- Close price $\mathbf{p}_t \in \mathbb{R}^D$: Adjusted close prices of the assets at time t .
- Open price $\mathbf{o}_t \in \mathbb{R}^D$: Opening prices of the assets at time t .
- High price $\mathbf{h}_t \in \mathbb{R}^D$: Highest prices of the assets at time t .
- Low price $\mathbf{l}_t \in \mathbb{R}^D$: Lowest prices of the assets at time t .
- Volume $\mathbf{v}_t \in \mathbb{R}^D$: Trading volume of the assets at time t .

- Technical indicators $\mathbf{I}_t \in \mathbb{R}^{D \times I}$: For each of the D assets, a vector \mathbf{i}_t of I technical indicators, such as moving averages, relative strength index (RSI), and Bollinger Bands, calculated from the asset prices.
- Macroeconomic indicators $\mathbf{M}_t \in \mathbb{R}^{D \times M}$: For each of the D assets, a vector \mathbf{m}_t of M macroeconomic indicators, such as volatility index and interest rates, which provide additional context about the financial environment.
- Covariance matrix $\mathbf{C}_t \in \mathbb{R}^{D \times D}$: For each of the D assets, a vector of D values representing the covariance between the assets in the portfolio at time t .

The description of technical and macroeconomic indicators is provided in more detail in Appendix B.

The action space \mathcal{A} is the set of possible actions that the agent can take at each time step. For the portfolio optimisation problem, the actions correspond to portfolio weights and are defined as follows:

$$\mathbf{a}_t = \mathbf{w}_t : w_{t,d} \in [0, 1] \quad \forall d \in \{1, \dots, D\}, \quad (3.1)$$

where \mathbf{w}_t is a vector of portfolio weights at time t , representing the allocation of the portfolio to each asset. The weights are constrained to be non-negative and sum to one:

$$\sum_{d=1}^D w_{t,d} = 1, \quad w_{t,d} \geq 0 \quad \forall d \in \{1, \dots, D\}. \quad (3.2)$$

Moreover, they are initialised to be equal for all assets, meaning that the agent starts with an equal allocation to each asset in the portfolio. The reason behind this is to avoid an initial bias and allow the agent to learn an allocation from the environment rather than favour any particular asset.

The transition function T describes how the state of the environment changes in response

to the action taken. It is defined as:

$$s_{t+1} = T(s_t, a_t), \quad (3.3)$$

where s_{t+1} is the new state of the environment after taking action a_t in state s_t . The transition function is determined by the dynamics of the financial market, which are influenced by the asset prices, trading volume and other factors. The trading dynamics assume that the agent does not have an impact on the market.

The reward function R models the direct reward of taking an action a_t in state s_t and transitioning to a new state s_{t+1} . It is defined as the change in the portfolio value from time t to time $t + 1$:

$$R_{t+1} = R(s_t, a_t, s_{t+1}) = V_{t+1} - V_t, \quad (3.4)$$

where the value of the portfolio at time t is given by the dot product of the portfolio weights and the asset close prices:

$$V_t = \mathbf{w}_t \cdot \mathbf{p}_t. \quad (3.5)$$

The goal of the agent is to learn a policy $\pi : \mathcal{S} \rightarrow \mathcal{A}$ that maximises the expected cumulative reward over time, which can be expressed as:

$$J(\pi) = \mathbb{E} \left[\sum_{t=0}^T \gamma^t R(s_t, a_t, s_{t+1}) \right], \quad (3.6)$$

where T is the time horizon and γ is the discount factor that determines the importance of future rewards.

The environment is implemented in Python ¹ using the `Gym` library [72], which provides a standard interface for reinforcement learning environments.

¹<https://www.python.org/>

3.3 Deep Reinforcement Learning Algorithms

The proposed solution is based on the DRL framework, which allows the agent to learn the optimal policy directly from the environment by taking actions and receiving rewards. The algorithms used are Advantage Actor-Critic (A2C), Proximal Policy Optimisation (PPO), Deep Q-Network (DQN), Deep Deterministic Policy Gradient (DDPG), Twin Delayed Deep Deterministic Policy Gradient (TD3) and Soft Actor-Critic (SAC).

The implementation is done using the **Stable Baselines3** library [73], which provides a set of state-of-the-art DRL algorithms with a consistent interface and easy-to-use API. The pseudo-code for each algorithm is provided in Appendix A.1.

3.3.1 Hyper-parameter tuning

Hyper-parameter tuning [74] is a crucial step in the training process of DRL models, as the right choice of hyper-parameters can significantly impact the model’s performance. In this thesis, hyper-parameter tuning refers to the process of optimising the training parameters of the DRL algorithms to maximise their performance in the task of portfolio optimisation. The hyper-parameters tuned include the learning rate, batch size, number of training steps, and other algorithm-specific parameters, which are summarised in Appendix C.1.

To implement hyper-parameter tuning in Python, the **wandb** [75] library is used, which provides a simple and efficient way to track experiments, visualise results, and manage hyper-parameter sweeps. A sweep is defined as a search for hyper-parameters that optimises a cost function, in our case, the Sharpe ratio [76]. Given that the models were implemented using the **Stable Baselines3** library, the integration with **wandb** allows for seamless tracking of hyper-parameter configurations and their corresponding performance metrics [77].

As mentioned above, sweeps can optimise a cost function to avoid naively testing every possible combination. Using `wandb`, a Bayesian optimisation approach is taken [78], which uses a probabilistic model to estimate the performance of different hyper-parameter configurations and selects the next configuration to test based on the expected improvement over the current best configuration. This allows for a more efficient search of the hyper-parameter space and reduces the number of configurations that need to be tested. Another option to reduce the time taken to find the optimal hyper-parameters is to use early termination. This method will stop a poorly performing run before it has fully completed, saving computational resources [79].

3.4 Post-hoc Explainability

Given the goal of improving the explainability of the DRL models, this thesis adopts explainability techniques to interpret the model’s decision-making process in a transparent manner. By using post-hoc methods, rather than modifying each individual model’s architecture to enhance their transparency, the proposal is model-agnostic and can be applied to any DRL model. Consequently, it combines the ability to find the most suitable architecture while maintaining the interpretability. The explainability techniques implemented are Feature Importance, Local Interpretable Model-agnostic Explanations (LIME), and SHapley Additive exPlanations (SHAP).

Following the work from de-la-Rica-Escudero et al. (2025) [71], the implementation of these techniques follows two directions. First, as in their paper, a surrogate model maps the state space to the action space as a proxy for the model’s decisions. The second direction uses the LIME and SHAP techniques directly on the DRL model to interpret its decisions.

3.4.1 Surrogate Model Explainability

The surrogate model is trained to approximate the behaviour of the DRL model by learning the mapping from its inputs, the environment representation, to its outputs, the portfolio weights. In the paper [71], the authors do not explicitly acknowledge the use of a surrogate model, even though their code implementation does so. A potential reason behind not explaining the model’s actions directly could be the code complexity in using SHAP with a DL model.

Given that the action space is continuous, the surrogate model is implemented using a `RandomForestRegressor` [80], which is a non-parametric model that can capture complex relationships between the inputs and outputs. The model is trained on the state-actions pairs of the test data, which is the object of the explanations. However, since the model has a number of hyper-parameters, it requires careful tuning to achieve optimal performance. Consequently, hyperparameter tuning was used to find the optimal architecture using `HalvingGridSearchCV` [81], which is a method that iteratively narrows down the search space by evaluating a subset of hyper-parameters and discarding the less promising ones. The use of grid search rather than Bayesian Optimisation, as was done for DRL hyper-parameter tuning in Section 3.3.1, is to replicate the approach taken in [71]. Once the optimal hyper-parameters have been found and the surrogate model has been trained, its prediction function is used as a proxy to interpret the original model’s decisions.

Feature importance is built-in for Random Forest Regressors, and can be easily accessed with the built-in property `feature_importances_` [82]. This method provides the importance of each feature in the state representation by using a combination of the fraction of the samples a feature contributes to and the mean decrease in impurity.

LIME and SHAP are then applied to the surrogate model via the predict function to

provide local explanations for individual predictions. Both of these techniques provide insights into the model’s decisions by perturbing the input data and observing the changes in the output. The LIME implementation is done using the `LimeTabularExplainer` [83], which is designed to work with tabular data and provides a way to explain individual predictions by approximating the model’s behaviour locally with a linear model. Similarly, for SHAP, the `TreeExplainer` [84] provides a particular implementation for tree-based models used to compute the SHAP values efficiently by exploiting the model’s inherent structure.

3.4.2 Direct Model Explainability

Undoubtedly, a surrogate model adds an additional layer of complexity and may obscure the understanding of the original model’s decisions. Therefore, the LIME and SHAP techniques are also applied directly to the prediction function of DRL model. This approach allows for a more direct interpretation of the model’s decision-making process, without the need of a supplementary level.

For LIME, the implementation is again done using `LimeTabularExplainer`, but the prediction function is now obtained from the relevant DRL algorithm. For SHAP, the `KernelExplainer` is used, which is a model-agnostic method that randomly samples feature coalitions to approximate SHAP values to reduce computation [85].

Chapter 4

Results

This chapter presents the results of conducting experiments under the methodology proposed in Chapter 3. The experiments were designed to evaluate the performance of the implemented DRL models for portfolio optimisation in changing environment representations and market conditions. Moreover, to enable the interpretability of the model’s decisions, a framework using post-hoc explainability techniques is explored.

4.1 Dataset

Given the general difficulty in finding the appropriate DRL algorithm with a suitable reward function for portfolio optimisation, the five implemented algorithms were tested on five different datasets. Each dataset consists of a different set of financial assets, ranging from three different asset classes. First, three datasets were constructed using the stock constituents of three renowned indexes:

- Dow Jones Industrial Average (DJIA) with 30 stocks,
- Euro Stoxx 50 Index (Euro Stoxx 50) with 50 stocks, and

- Financial Times Stock Exchange 100 Index (FTSE 100) with 100 stocks.

The constituents of each of the indexes were retrieved in April 2025 and can be found in Appendix D.1. It is important to note that the datasets were chosen to illustrate different currencies, as this introduces another factor of changing market conditions.

Additionally, two datasets were constructed using commodities and currencies, respectively. The commodities dataset includes six different commodities, which are listed in Appendix D.2. These are a sample of the most traded commodities in the market and were chosen by their availability in the `Yahoo! Finance API`¹. With regard to the currencies dataset, it includes ten different currency pairs, listed in Appendix D.3. These were selected based on their trading volume and liquidity, with all pairs quoted in United States Dollar (USD).

The datasets are constructed using daily data from January 2016 to July 2025 downloaded using the Python `yfinance` library [86]. The dataset is partitioned into two disjoint sets: training and testing, with the training set containing data from January 2016 to December 2023, and the testing set starting on January 2024 until July 2025. For hyper-parameter tuning, the training set is further split into a training and validation set, with the validation sets corresponding to the period between January 2023 and December 2023.

4.2 Experiment Design

To address the challenge of finding a suitable algorithm for portfolio optimisation, the five implemented DRL algorithms were tested on the five datasets described in Section 4.1, with the goal of evaluating the performance of each algorithm in different scenarios and market conditions. Moreover, the environment representation will also be varied to

¹<https://uk.finance.yahoo.com>

assess the impact of more information on the model’s performance. Four environment representations were considered, each with a different number of features.

- Simple dataset: Open, High, Low, Close, Volume (OHLCV) of the assets.
- Covariance dataset: To the simple dataset, the covariance matrix of the assets is added to explicitly model the relationships between the assets.
- Indicators dataset: Technical and macroeconomic indicators are added to the simple dataset.
- Complete dataset: The complete dataset includes the OHLCV, the covariance matrix and the technical and macroeconomic indicators.

The strength of DRL algorithms lies in their ability to learn from high-dimensional data, which is why the goal is to evaluate whether a more exhaustive environment representation leads to better performance, despite the higher computational cost.

Finally, the performance of the algorithms is closely related to the choice of hyper-parameters. Ideally, the hyper-parameters should be tuned to find the optimal configuration for each algorithm and dataset combination. However, it was not feasible to perform tuning for all combinations of algorithms, datasets and environment representations. Consequently, the default hyper-parameters for all the experiments were chosen based on a testing run that was done on a small dataset of five tickers with indicators as environment representation. Those results can be seen in Appendix C.3 and the default hyper-parameters are summarised in Appendix C.2.

Overall, the experiments were designed to evaluate the performance of the implemented DRL algorithms in different scenarios, with the goal of finding the most suitable algorithm for portfolio optimisation. However, testing five algorithms on five distinct datasets with four possible environment representations would result in a total of twenty

different experiments per algorithm. Additionally, optimising the parameters for each experiment further expands the experimental space and significantly increases the computational time required.

Due to limited computational resources², the scope of experiments was adjusted as follows. Firstly, hyper-parameter tuning was performed only for the Dow Jones 30 dataset with simple and indicators environment representation, as it is the smallest equities dataset and requires less computational time. Second, since the covariance matrix increases the dimensionality of the environment representation, it was only included in the experiments with the Dow Jones 30, the currencies and the commodities datasets.

4.3 Evaluation

As outlined in the previous section, the experiments are designed to evaluate the performance of the implemented DRL algorithms in different scenarios and market conditions. The evaluation will focus on key performance metrics, as well as benchmarking against traditional portfolio optimisation techniques.

4.3.1 Performance Metrics

The performance metrics are provided through the `pyfolio` library [87], which includes a `perf_stats` method to calculate various performance metrics of a strategy.

The main metrics for comparison are:

- The cumulative return is the total change in investment price over a period of time, representing the overall percentage gain or loss from the initial investment value.

²The university did not provide access to a computing cluster; therefore, all experiments were conducted on a personal computer.

The formula is given by:

$$\text{Cumulative return} = \frac{\text{Final portfolio value} - \text{Initial portfolio value}}{\text{Initial portfolio value}}. \quad (4.1)$$

- The annualised return is the geometric average of the amount of money earned by an investment each year over a given period of time, providing a standardised measure of annual performance. It is calculated as follows:

$$\text{Annualised Return} = \left(\frac{\text{Final portfolio value}}{\text{Initial portfolio value}} \right)^{\frac{1}{\text{Number of years}}} - 1. \quad (4.2)$$

- The annualised volatility is the standard deviation of returns annualised to provide a measure of investment risk on a yearly basis and can be computed with the following formula:

$$\text{Annualised Volatility} = \text{Standard Deviation of Returns} \times \sqrt{\text{Yearly trading days}}, \quad (4.3)$$

where the number of trading days per year is typically assumed to be 252.

- The Sharpe ratio is a measure of risk-adjusted performance that compares the excess return of an investment to a risk-free asset against its volatility. The ratio is given by:

$$\text{Sharpe Ratio} = \frac{R_p - R_f}{\sigma_p}, \quad (4.4)$$

where R_p is the annualised return of the portfolio, R_f is the annualised risk-free rate, and σ_p is the annualised volatility of the portfolio.

- The max drawdown is the maximum percentage loss from a peak to a trough during a specified period, indicating the worst-case scenario for portfolio decline.

Its formula is:

$$\text{Max Drawdown} = \frac{\text{Peak Value} - \text{Trough Value}}{\text{Peak Value}}. \quad (4.5)$$

4.3.2 Benchmark Strategies

Aside from computing relevant performance metrics, the algorithms will be benchmarked against traditional portfolio optimisation methods. These are designed to provide a baseline for comparison and to evaluate the performance of the DRL algorithms in relation to established methods. The following benchmark strategies were considered.

- Equal-weighted portfolio: A simple strategy that allocates an equal weight to each asset in the portfolio.
- Mean-variance optimisation: A classic portfolio optimisation method that aims to maximise Sharpe ratio.
- Min-variance portfolio: Another classic portfolio optimisation method that seeks to minimise the portfolio's volatility.
- Momentum portfolio: A strategy that invests in assets with positive momentum, i.e. those that have performed well in the previous time step, and avoids those with negative momentum.

The implementation of the mean-variance and the min-variance portfolio allocation strategies has been done using the `PyPortfolioOpt` Python library [88], whereas the equal-weighted and momentum strategies have been implemented using custom code.

Finally, if the portfolio is made up of equities of a relevant index, the benchmark will also include the index itself, which serves as a reference point for the performance of the portfolio.

4.4 Deep Reinforcement Learning Algorithm Experiments

4.4.1 Algorithm Comparison

In this section, the results of the experiment to identify the suitability of the implemented DRL algorithms for portfolio optimisation under different market conditions are presented. The algorithms are trained on data with a simple environment representation, which only includes the OHLCV prices of the assets, and evaluated on the five datasets. The table 4.1 summarises the results of the experiment for the A2C algorithm, where each row corresponds to a different dataset and each column to a different performance metric. The results for the other algorithms are presented in Appendix E.1.

Table 4.1: Algorithm comparison results for the A2C implementation across the different datasets under the indicators feature set.

Dataset	Annualised return	Cumulative return	Annualised volatility	Sharpe ratio	Max drawdown
Dow Jones 30	0.2229	0.3491	0.1483	1.4307	-0.1510
Euro Stoxx 50	0.1467	0.2293	0.1549	0.9617	-0.1667
FTSE 100	0.1052	0.1623	0.1268	0.8520	-0.1409
Commodities	0.2353	0.3694	0.2041	1.1372	-0.1512
Currencies	-0.0011	-0.0017	0.0462	-0.0018	-0.0665

For the case of A2C, the algorithm demonstrates competitive performance particularly for the DowJones30 dataset, achieving a cumulative return of 34.91% and a Sharpe ratio of 1.43. Positive results are also obtained with the commodities dataset, which demonstrates the highest cumulative return of 36.94% and a Sharpe ratio of 1.14. Despite being of the same asset class, the EuroStoxx50 and the FTSE100 datasets show relatively lower performance, with cumulative returns of 22.93% and 16.23%, respectively, most

likely due to the higher number of assets. With regard to the currencies dataset, the performance of the algorithm is less impressive, with near-zero cumulative returns and Sharpe ratios, indicating that the algorithm struggles to learn a profitable strategy in this asset class.

Although similar observations can be made for the other algorithms, the performance varies significantly across different datasets, as outlined in the tables in Appendix E.1. Regarding PPO, better performance is achieved in the commodities dataset, with a cumulative return of 39.9% and a Sharpe ratio of 1.26. which is slightly more than 0.1 higher than that of the A2C algorithm. DDPG performs the best in the DowJones30 dataset, achieving similar performance to that of A2C, with a 34.54% cumulative return and a Sharpe ratio of 1.38. However, TD3 surpasses all other algorithms for the DowJones30 dataset and the Commodities datasets, achieving 38.02% and 43.86% in terms of cumulative return, respectively. Finally, SAC demonstrates a strong performance in the EuroStoxx50 dataset, with a cumulative return of 27.71% and a Sharpe ratio of 1.14, but it does not outperform the other algorithms in the DowJones30 and Commodities datasets. The algorithm that performs better in the FTSE100 dataset is DDPG, with a cumulative return of 20.76% and a Sharpe ratio of 1.08. In terms of the currencies dataset, the performance in the other algorithms does not differ significantly from that of A2C, with cumulative returns close to zero and Sharpe ratios below 0.1. A possible reason for this is a non-optimal hyper-parameter configuration was used followed by the significant changes in the market conditions from one time step to the next.

Taking the DowJones30 dataset with an environment representation made up of the OHLCV prices and the indicators, the performance of the algorithms can be benchmarked against traditional strategies and the DJIA Index. The evolution of the cumulative returns over the testing period is shown in Figure 4.1 and the corresponding

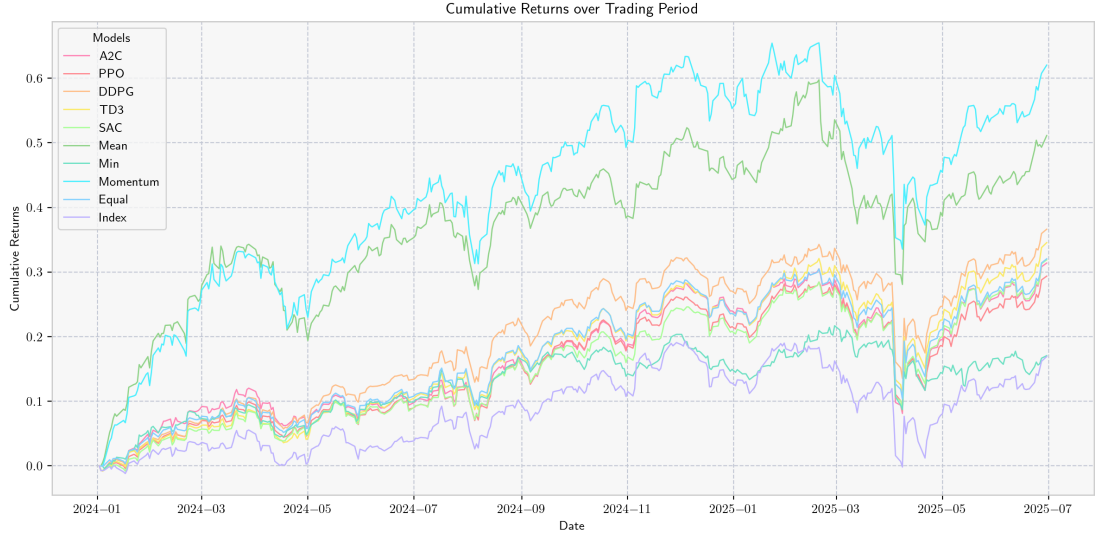


Figure 4.1: Evolution of the Cumulative Returns for the DowJones30 dataset with the OHLCV prices and indicators environment representation.

performance metrics are summarised in Table 4.2.

Table 4.2: Algorithm comparison results for the DowJones30 dataset with prices and indicators feature set. The colours correspond to the best performing configurations, with blue for the best performing DRL algorithm and green for the best benchmark.

Algorithm / Bench- mark	Annualised return	Cumulative return	Annualised volatility	Sharpe ratio	Max drawdown
A2C	0.2286	0.3573	0.1557	1.3994	-0.1620
PPO	0.2016	0.3134	0.1416	1.3679	-0.1370
DDPG	0.2596	0.4086	0.1558	1.5597	-0.1687
TD3	0.2214	0.3456	0.1517	1.3938	-0.1609
SAC	0.2050	0.3189	0.1480	1.3340	-0.1538
Mean	0.3218	0.5114	0.1839	1.6096	-0.1983
Min	0.1123	0.1705	0.1157	0.9777	-0.1066

Algorithm / Bench- mark	Annualised return	Cumulative return	Annualised volatility	Sharpe ratio	Max drawdown
Momentum	0.3855	0.6204	0.1990	1.7388	-0.1929
Equal	0.2066	0.3205	0.1476	1.3461	-0.1541
Index	0.1110	0.1692	0.1532	0.7635	-0.1637

The results show that all the algorithms outperform the index for all the considered metrics, as well as the min-variance portfolio. Out of all the DRL algorithms, DDPG achieves the highest cumulative return of 23.41% and a Sharpe ratio of 1.49, followed by TD3 with a cumulative return of 22.14% and a Sharpe ratio of 1.39, while PPO has the worst performance of the five with a cumulative return of 18.95% and a Sharpe ratio of 1.24. However, none of these outperform the mean-variance and momentum benchmark strategies, with the latter achieving a Sharpe ratio of 1.74 and a cumulative return of 38.55%, which is significantly higher than the performance of the DRL algorithms.

All in all, the results show that the performance of the algorithms varies significantly across different datasets. However, DDPG seems to consistently perform well across the experiments. This can be attributed to its ability to maximise returns. A2C also performs well, particularly in the DowJones30 dataset, as it is capable of balancing risk and returns, showing 1% less volatility than DDPG.

4.4.2 Environment Representation

Another source of variability in the performance of the algorithms is the environment representation. In this section, the results of comparing the DRL algorithms on different environment representations are presented. For the experiment to be meaningful, it has been performed on the DowJones30, the currencies and the commodities datasets.

This choice provides the ability to compare the performance of the algorithms across different asset classes, while also allowing for a more manageable computational cost. The table 4.3 compares the performance according to the Sharpe ratio and, in Appendix E.2, according to the cumulative return.

Table 4.3: Environment representation experiment comparison according to the Sharpe ratio. The colours correspond to the best performing per row, with blue for the DowJones30 dataset and green for the Commodities dataset.

Algorithm	Dataset	Simple	Indicators	Covariance	Complete
A2C	DowJones30	1.4307	1.3994	1.3615	1.3929
	Commodities	1.1373	1.2881	1.0273	1.2079
	Currencies	-0.0018	-0.0571	-0.0674	-0.0053
PPO	DowJones30	1.3410	1.3679	1.3524	1.1890
	Commodities	1.2600	1.1256	1.1559	1.2015
	Currencies	0.0014	0.0699	0.0652	0.1399
DDPG	DowJones30	1.3826	1.5597	1.3562	1.3261
	Commodities	1.1745	0.9871	1.0731	1.1612
	Currencies	0.0528	0.0689	0.0200	0.0115
TD3	DowJones30	1.4911	1.3938	1.1792	1.2084
	Commodities	1.4537	0.9776	1.0462	1.2388
	Currencies	0.0807	-0.0088	-0.0086	-0.0436
SAC	DowJones30	1.4521	1.3340	1.4670	1.3017
	Commodities	1.3727	1.1973	1.1773	1.0500
	Currencies	0.0806	0.1771	-0.1441	0.2550

The results show that the performance of the algorithms varies significantly across different environment representations. For the DowJones30 dataset, the OHLCV prices with

indicators representation achieves the highest Sharpe ratio of 1.56 for DDPG, closely followed by the OHLCV prices for the TD3 algorithm. The OHLCV prices with covariance representation achieves 1.47 for SAC. For the complete feature set, no algorithm achieves a higher Sharpe ratio than in any of the other environment representations, with DDPG achieving the highest value of 1.36, which is lower than the Sharpe ratio of 1.56 it achieved with the OHLCV prices with indicators representation.

For the commodities dataset, the results are completely different to those of the DowJones30. TD3 achieves the highest Sharpe ratio and highest cumulative return in the simple feature set. Moreover, when looking at this dataset, explicitly adding the covariance to the environment representation does not lead to better performance in terms of Sharpe ratio. However, in terms of cumulative return, it is DDPG in conjunction with the complete feature representation that achieves the highest cumulative return of 42.11%.

Finally, for the currencies dataset, the performance of the algorithms is significantly lower than in the other two datasets. The highest Sharpe ratio achieved is 0.18 with SAC in conjunction with the complete feature set, while the cumulative returns are close to zero for all algorithms and environment representations. This suggests that the algorithms struggle to learn a profitable strategy in this asset class, possibly due to the high volatility and low liquidity of the currency market.

Overall, since there is only one instance out of the 36 combinations where adding more features led to an increase in performance, it is clear that explicitly incorporating the covariance matrix neither leads to a higher Sharpe ratio nor cumulative return. This implies that no value is added to the environment representation, rather only more dimensions and computational complexity. Indeed the information in the covariance matrix may be redundant as the algorithms are likely all capable of learning the relationships between the assets from the OHLCV prices. However, adding indicators to the environment representation does lead to an increase in performance. While the models

could theoretically learn to compute these indicators from first principles, including them directly as part of the environment representation avoids this extra step and confirms their analytical strength.

4.4.3 Hyper-parameter Tuning

As has been mentioned in the above experiments, the performance of the algorithms is substantially influenced by the choice of hyper-parameters. Ideally, a systematic approach should be employed to find the optimal hyper-parameters for each algorithm, dataset and environment representation combination. However, due to the computational cost of hyper-parameter tuning, it was only performed for the DowJones30 dataset with the OHLCV and indicators environment representations over five trials. The results for each of the algorithms with the default hyper-parameters versus the tuned hyper-parameters are presented in Table 4.4 for the two features sets: simple and with indicators.

Table 4.4: Hyper-parameter tuning experiment results for the DowJones30 dataset for simple and indicators feature set. The colours correspond to the best performing configurations, with blue for the best performance on the simple feature set and green for the indicators one.

Algorithm	Metric	Simple		Indicators	
		Default	Tuned	Default	Tuned
A2C	Cumulative Return	0.3387	0.3491	0.3139	0.3573
	Sharpe ratio	1.3203	1.4307	1.2575	1.3994
PPO	Cumulative Return	0.3174	0.2844	0.2937	0.3134
	Sharpe ratio	1.3410	1.1939	1.2407	1.3679
DDPG	Cumulative Return	0.3454	0.27404	0.3663	0.4086
	Sharpe ratio	1.3826	1.2088	1.4896	1.5597

Algorithm	Metric	Simple		Indicators	
		Default	Tuned	Default	Tuned
TD3	Cumulative Return	0.3902	0.2974	0.3456	0.2891
	Sharpe ratio	1.4911	1.2354	1.3938	1.2332
SAC	Cumulative Return	0.2243	0.3703	0.3189	0.2646
	Sharpe ratio	0.9769	1.4521	1.3340	1.1688

By comparing the data presented in these tables, it is clear that finding the optimal configuration can have a significant impact on the performance of the algorithms. For instance, although the cumulative return for A2C in the simple feature set only improves by 1%, the Sharpe ratio increases from 1.32 to 1.43, meaning that the algorithm learns to better balance risk while maximising returns. Another example is the SAC algorithm, which achieves a better performance than that of the default configuration. However, for the PPO, DDPG and TD3 algorithms, there are no improvements and the default hyper-parameters perform better. Similarly, when looking at the indicators feature set, not all the algorithms show sign of improvements. This means that, for that particular algorithm, dataset and environment representation combination, the optimal hyper-parameter configuration has not been found. Understandably, due to the limited computational resources, the hyper-parameter search was very limited to only five runs, which is not sufficient for a thorough search.

4.5 Explainability Results

A main objective of this thesis is to be able to interpret the decisions made by the DRL algorithms. The following explainability framework is designed to provide insights into the decision-making process of the algorithms and present the most relevant features

that influence the portfolio allocation decision in a visual and human-readable manner. As described in Section 3.4, two approaches were employed: a surrogate model and direct explanations.

For the purposes of visualisation, the results are shown for a sample dataset of five tickers (AAPL, CSCO, HON, MSFT, V) from the DJIA and using only the open, close, high, and low prices as the environment representation. This choice is made because explanations are more easily visualised when the number of assets and features is small. However, the explainability framework itself is general and can be applied to any number of assets and any environment representation. In practice, to support larger portfolios and more complex feature sets, an interactive dashboard could be developed, allowing users to select the relevant assets in the portfolio for which explanations are required. Moreover, only the explanations of the A2C algorithm are presented, as it serves as a representative example of the framework’s capabilities.

To provide interpretations, several explainability techniques were employed. The surrogate model was implemented following the proposal by de-la-Rica-Escudero et al. (2025) [71]. Although their paper does not explicitly acknowledge the use of a surrogate model nor outline the reasons for its use, it can be inferred that using a simpler transparent algorithm as a proxy provides built-in feature importance, which is a global explainability method. However, there does not seem to be any added value when using LIME and SHAP as they are both model-agnostic methods capable of providing explanations for any black-box model. Consequently, direct model explanations were applied using these two methods.

4.5.1 Feature Importance Results

The feature importance results from the surrogate model are shown in Figure 4.2, where the top 20 features are ranked according to the importance measure. The ranking shows

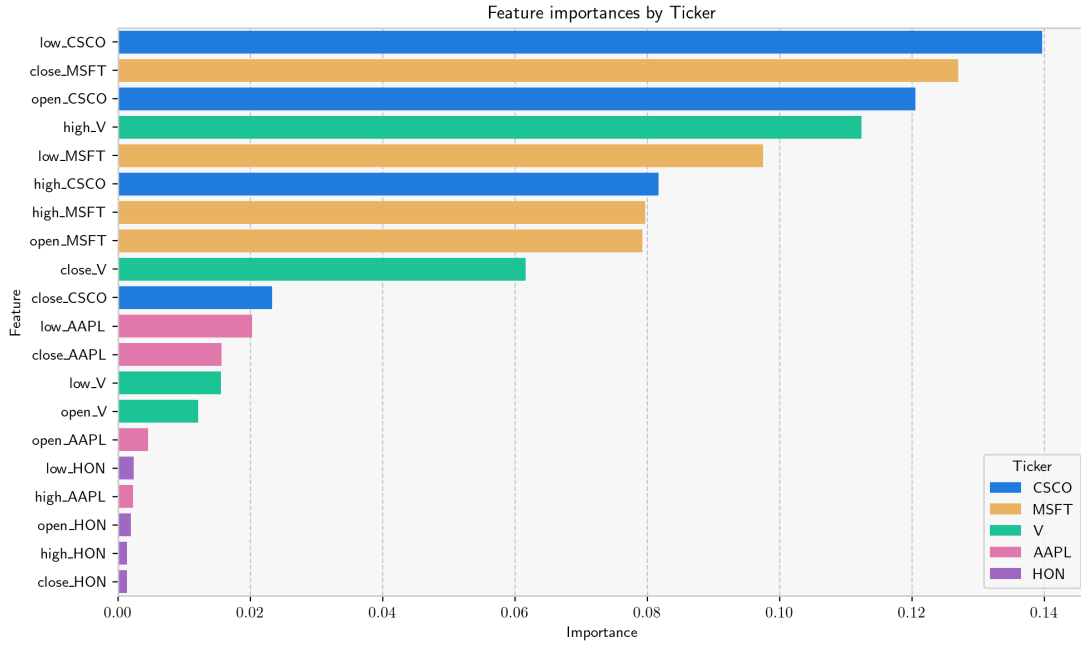


Figure 4.2: Top features from the surrogate model according to feature importance.

that the low price of CSCO and the close price of MSFT are the two most important features, followed by the open price of CSCO. At the bottom section of the ranking, HON and AAPL features have a lower importance.

This trend is further confirmed by looking at the mean importance of the features for each asset, as shown in Figure 4.3. This indicates that the agent heavily relied on the performance of MSFT and CSCO to guide its portfolio allocation decisions, while the other assets played a less significant role.

Another interesting result about the feature importance shown in Figure 4.2 is that the different assets have a different OHLCV feature importance distribution, which suggests that the agent may have developed distinct strategies for each asset. Figure F.1 in Appendix F.1 shows the top features grouped by asset, where it can be seen more clearly how each asset has a different most important feature. In the case of AAPL, HON and CSCO, the low price played a more critical role in informing the agent's decisions,

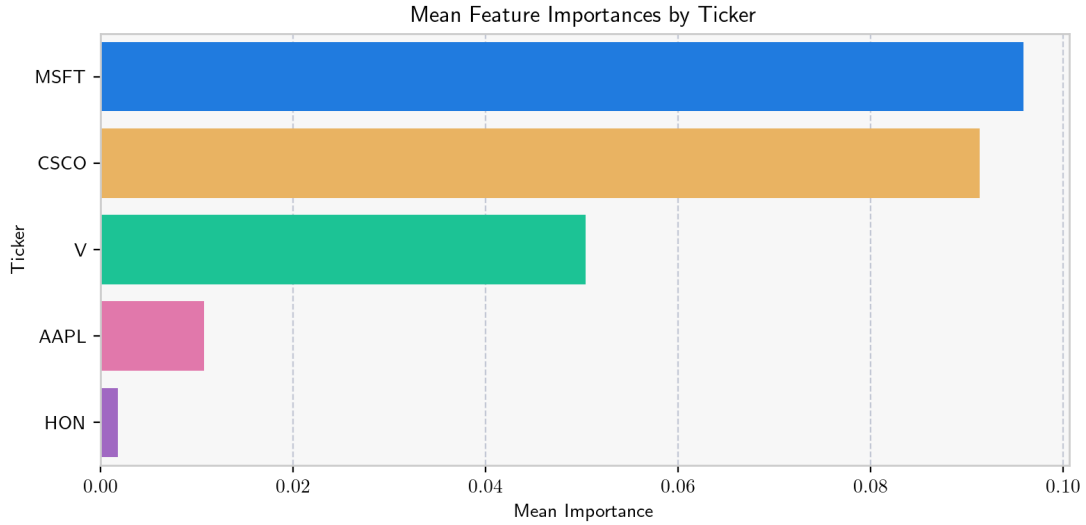


Figure 4.3: Mean feature importance per asset from the surrogate model.

showing how extreme price changes lead the agent to adjust the portfolio allocation. In contrast, for MSFT, the close price is the most important feature, which might imply the agent is more focused on the end of day activities of this asset. Finally, looking over all the assets, Figure F.2 in Appendix F.1 shows how features corresponding to low and high prices contributed the most to the agent’s decisions. This again indicates that the agent is sensitive to price extremes of the assets.

4.5.2 Local Interpretable Model-agnostic Explanations Results

The LIME method provides local explanations for individual predictions, to determine the most influential features in a model’s decision for a particular instance. For a particular instance, the library displays the explanation as three components:

- the predicted value of the model, within a minimum and maximum range;
- a list of the top ten features that contributed to the model’s prediction, with their corresponding values and their contribution; and

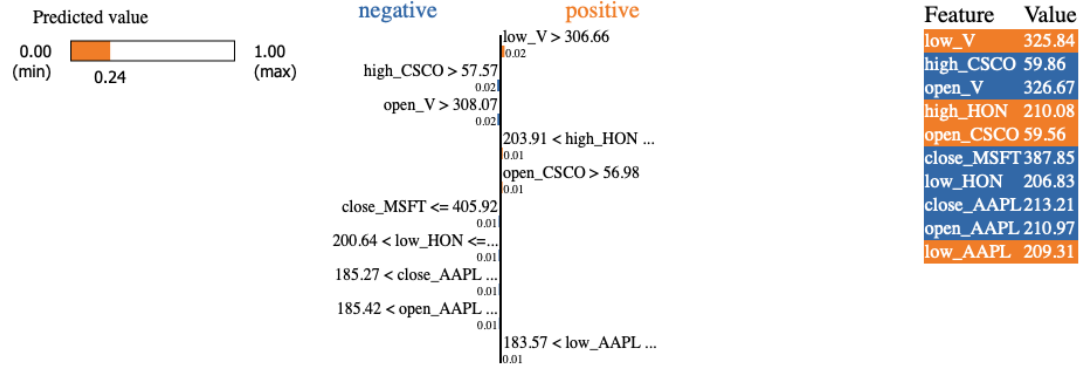


Figure 4.4: LIME explanations for the A2C algorithm for a specific observation in the test dataset for the MSFT asset. The orange bars indicate features that contribute positively to the prediction, while the blue bars indicate features that contribute negatively.

- a coloured list outlining the feature values, corresponding to positive (orange) or negative (blue) contribution.

Figure 4.4 presents the LIME explanation for the MSFT asset on a selected trading day from the test dataset, while the other assets are found in Appendix F.2. In this instance, the low price of V contributes positively to the MSFT allocation, while the high price of CSCO and the open price of V negatively affect the prediction by pushing the allocation lower. Examining such local explanations across multiple time steps can help identify features that consistently impact portfolio allocation decisions.

4.5.3 Shapley Additive Explanations Results

The results of the SHAP analysis provide both a global view of the feature importance across all time steps and assets, as well as a local interpretation for individual predictions. As with the case of LIME, instead of using a surrogate model, the explanations are extracted from the A2C model directly. Since the predictions of the output are weight allocations across all portfolio assets, the SHAP values presented in this section correspond only to AAPL, but the interpretations can be generalised to other assets and

algorithms.

Figure 4.5 depicts a beeswarm plot, where the x-axis represents the SHAP value, which measures the impact of a feature on the model's output; while the y-axis displays the top features. Each point in the beeswarm plot represents a single prediction, with the point's colour indicating whether its corresponding feature value is low, coloured in blue, or high, coloured in magenta. The beeswarm plot provides a visual representation of the distribution of SHAP values for each feature, allowing for an easy comparison of their importance. The most important feature for the AAPL asset is the low price of the MSFT asset and, by visual inspection, the high values of the low price of MSFT push the AAPL allocation lower, while the low values of the low price of MSFT push the AAPL allocation higher. However, this is not quite significant as there is a cluster of data points around the zero, indicating that, for a number of trading days, the low price of MSFT does not have an impact on AAPL's allocation.

The `shap` Python library provides numerous visualisations to explain the prediction of a model. An interesting one is the force plot, shown in Figure 4.6, for the AAPL weight allocation and the contribution of all features. The force plot visualises the impact of each feature on the model's weight allocation over the entire test dataset ordered by time. Positive values, visualised in magenta, show feature contributions that push the allocation higher, while negative values, in blue, push it lower. The baseline is the average weight allocation across all time steps.

The library provides the output in HyperText Markup Language (HTML) format that allows interaction with the visualisation and to gain deeper insights into the model's behaviour. Using the force plot in Figure 4.7, it is possible to single out the effects of AAPL's most important feature, the low price of MSFT, over the test period. Its impact is very well-defined. For approximately the first 30 time steps, it has a positive contribution, increasing AAPL's allocation, while for the remainder of the test period,

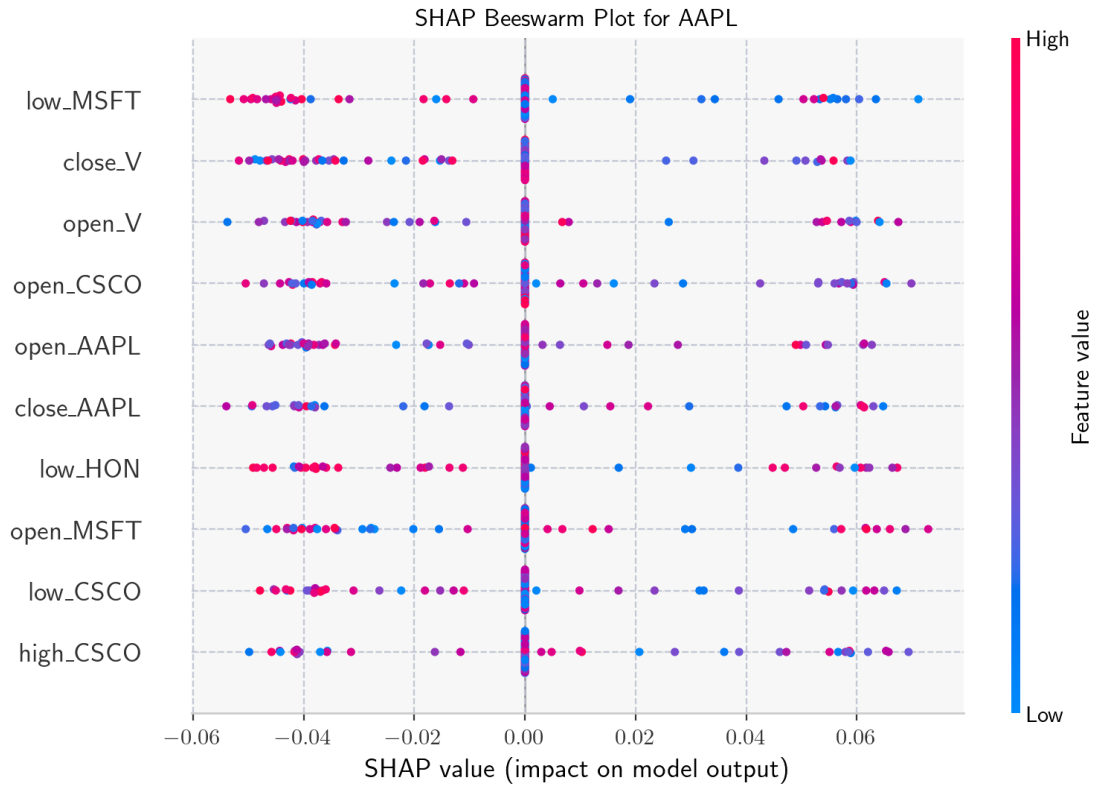


Figure 4.5: Beeswarm SHAP explanations for the A2C algorithm for the AAPL asset. The x-axis represents the SHAP values, whilst the y-axis represents the top features. The colour indicates the feature value, with magenta being high and blue being low.

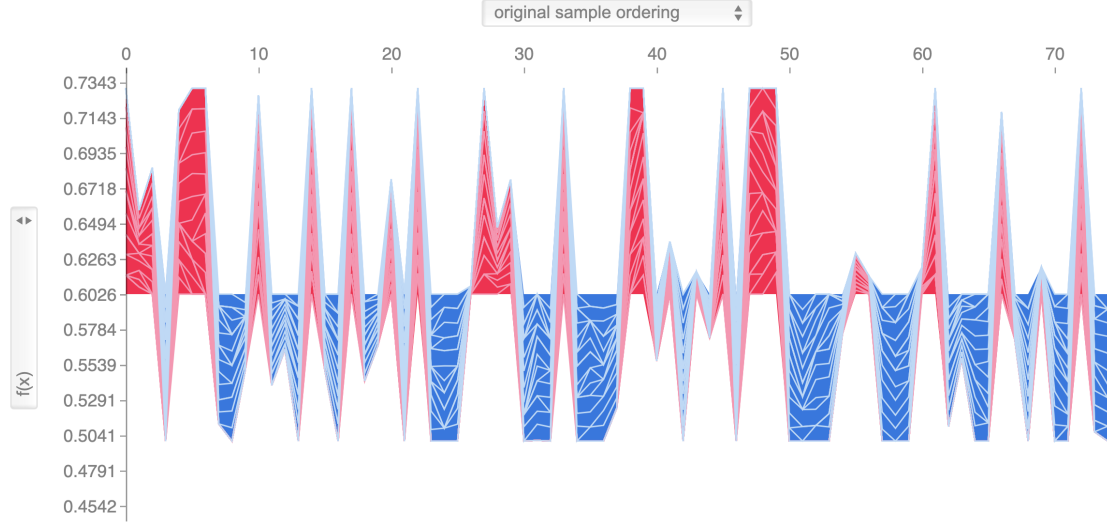


Figure 4.6: SHAP force plot for the weight allocation of the AAPL asset for the A2C algorithm.

it has mostly a negative contribution, decreasing the asset weight.

Lundberg and Lee (2017) [52] showed that LIME is a subset of SHAP and, as a consequence, it is possible to obtain local explanations using the `shap` library. Figure 4.8 shows the local explanation for the AAPL asset at a single observation of the test dataset. Although the visualisation is different, the information it provides is similar to that of LIME. Shown horizontally, the features in magenta push the allocation higher, while those in blue push it lower. In this case, the most important features that contribute to the allocation weight of AAPL are only features that increase the allocation and, as such, no blue features are present. The local explanations for the other assets at a single observation can be found in Appendix F.3.

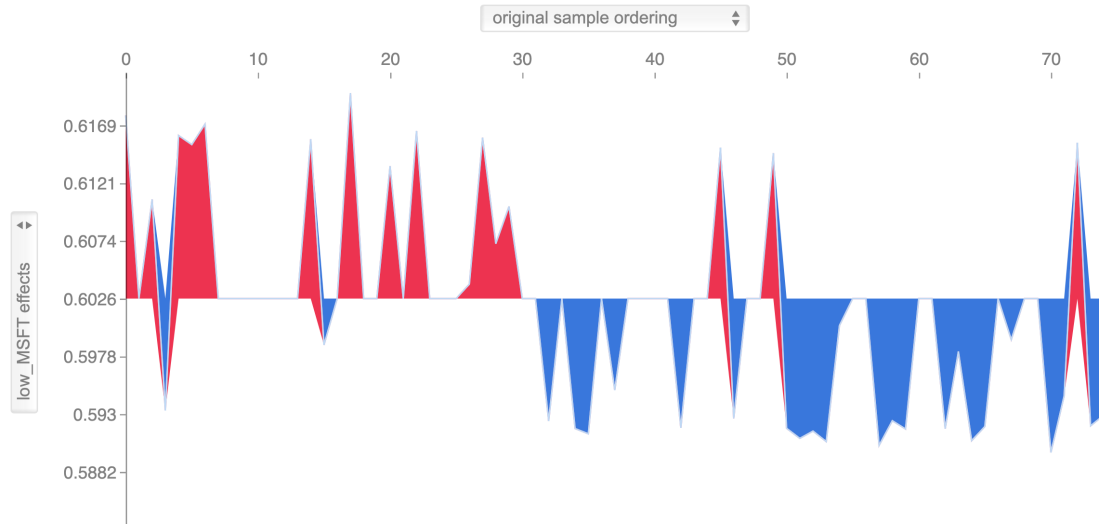


Figure 4.7: SHAP force plot for the impact of MSFT low price feature in the weight allocation of the AAPL asset for the A2C algorithm.

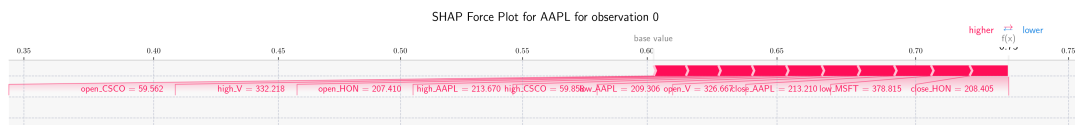


Figure 4.8: SHAP force plot for the weight allocation of the AAPL asset for the A2C algorithm at the first time step of the test dataset.

Chapter 5

Legal, Social, Ethical and Professional Issues

The development and deployment of Deep Reinforcement Learning (DRL) algorithms to perform profitable portfolio allocation raises several legal, social, ethical and professional issues that must be considered. The incorporation of post-hoc explainable techniques to understand, interpret and clarify the decision-making process of these algorithms is a crucial step towards addressing these concerns. This chapter explores them in detail, referencing relevant regulatory frameworks and professional codes of conducts, and highlights potential mitigation strategies.

5.1 Legal Issues

When deploying Machine Learning (ML) algorithms in finance, the European Union (EU)’s Artificial Intelligence Act (AI Act) [68] classifies them as high-risk under Article 6 due to their potential impact on an individual’s economic well-being. Consequently, high-risk systems must comply with Chapter 3 - Section 2, Articles 9-15, which include

the obligations for risk management, data governance, documentation, transparency and human supervision. In particular, Article 13 requires that high-risk AI systems's outputs are interpretable. The use of explainability techniques ensures that the decision-making process of the algorithm can be understood and justified, thus adhering to the legal requirements set forth by the AI Act.

In addition, algorithmic trading systems must adhere to the European Union directive on Markets in Financial Instruments Directive II (MiFID II) [89] and the United Kingdom (UK) Financial Conduct Authority (FCA) guidance on *Algorithmic Trading Compliance in Wholesale Markets* [90]. These regulations require robust governance and oversight frameworks, risk controls and thorough testing infrastructure. In this project, back-testing has been carried out to assess the algorithm's performance under varying market conditions followed by explainability techniques to enable the auditability of the system.

5.2 Social Issues

Despite the growing exposure to Artificial Intelligence (AI) systems with the rise of Large Language Models (LLMs), there is still a significant lack of understanding and trust in these systems. Some of the reasons behind this mistrust include the black box nature of models, making outputs hard to interpret, lack of human-like qualities in the models, and perceived limitations to adapt to new situations and learn from previous mistakes.

In the context of this work, the integration of explainability techniques addresses the black box behaviour of the implemented technology by offering clear, data-driven justifications. However, transparency must also be accessible. It is essential to provide a user-friendly interface to easily access the explanations and generate plain language descriptions for non-technical audiences.

5.3 Ethical Issues

The ethical implications of DRL in portfolio optimisation are multifaceted. The primary concern is the potential for these systems to make decisions that may not align with human values or ethical standards. For instance, if the algorithm prioritises profit maximisation without considering the social and/or environmental impacts of its investment choices, it could lead to unethical outcomes, such as supporting companies with poor labour practices or those contributing to environmental degradation. To address this concern, the following practices can be put in place:

1. the end-user should have full control over the assets included in their portfolio, allowing them to exclude companies that do not meet their ethical values; and
2. the environment's representation can be expanded to include ethical dimensions, like social impact or environmental sustainability metrics.

Regarding the environment representation, it was not possible to incorporate such data as it is not readily available nor in a standardised format. This is why, although there was an interest to broaden the environment representation to include other sources outside of the financial domain, it was not feasible to do so in this thesis.

A critical point in portfolio allocation is risk management. In this research, a performance metric that balances return maximisation and risk minimisation is used for hyper-parameter tuning, ensuring that the agent learns to avoid overly risky investments. Additionally, the inclusion of a risk-free asset enables a safe-guard mechanism. The agent can be implemented to allocate all the resources to cash when market volatility exceeds a pre-defined threshold and resume only when said volatility decreases.

Finally, potential biases in the training data or model structure could result in allocations favouring certain industries or assets classes. This thesis mitigates such biases by

constructing a portfolio from diversified indices (Appendix D.1) and using explainability techniques to audit the decisions for systematic biases.

5.4 Professional Issues

In a research project of this calibre, it is crucial to conduct the work in accordance with the British Computer Society (BCS) Code of Conduct [91] and the The Institution of Engineering and Technology (IET) Rules of Conduct [92]. Particular focus must be put in ensuring that all non-original work and external contributions are explicitly acknowledged, following the principles of the BCS Code of Conduct [91]. This is not only limited to the written product, but the utmost consideration must be put in explicitly acknowledging all third-party libraries, datasets and code and following their use guidelines.

Chapter 6

Conclusion

This thesis has examined the application of Deep Reinforcement Learning (DRL) algorithms for optimal portfolio allocation in dynamic financial markets. The primary objective was to develop an explainable model-agnostic framework capable of enhancing the understanding of any DRL algorithm's predictions. Such a tool would provide insights into the decision-making process of these complex models and facilitate auditability.

Five state-of-the-art DRL algorithms, namely Advantage Actor-Critic (A2C), Proximal Policy Optimisation (PPO), Deep Deterministic Policy Gradient (DDPG), Twin Delayed Deep Deterministic Policy Gradient (TD3) and Soft Actor-Critic (SAC), were implemented and evaluated on a portfolio management task. To assess the behaviour of these algorithms in different market conditions, a comprehensive experimental setup was designed, involving various datasets and environment representations. The datasets ranged from equities to commodities and currencies, each presenting unique challenges and opportunities for the DRL algorithms.

The results demonstrated that DRL algorithms can effectively learn and adapt to dynamic market conditions, achieving competitive performance compared to traditional

portfolio management strategies. However, the challenge remains in finding the optimal hyper-parameters, uniquely suited to each algorithm and dataset combination, in order to be able to fully exploit their potential.

Regarding explainability, the framework developed in this thesis successfully enhances the interpretability, transparency and auditability of these black box models. The incorporation of feature importance through a surrogate model, Local Interpretable Model-agnostic Explanations (LIME) analysis and SHapley Additive exPlanations (SHAP) values provides an exhaustive methodology for understanding both individual predictions and the overall decision-making process of the models. However, the results highlight the superiority of the SHAP technique, which is capable of providing global explanations and feature importance without the need for an additional layer, in conjunction with local explanations.

6.1 Future Work

There are several areas where future research could enhance this work. The main limitation of this thesis has been the lack of computational resources, which would have enabled optimal hyper-parameter tuning, exploration of more extensive feature space and evaluation of reward functions.

Firstly, any future work should aim to fully explore the hyper-parameter space for each of the DRL algorithms, datasets and environment representations. In a similar vein, current research in price prediction has investigated the impact of a smaller feature representation by performing feature engineering techniques, such as feature selection and dimensionality reduction. Such measures might not only improve model performance and reduce over-fitting, but also reduce computational requirements.

Secondly, even in the case of optimal hyper-parameter configuration, comparing the

performance of the models to those of traditional methods left room for improvement. Exploring alternative reward functions, such as Sharpe ratio, incorporating additional constraints, such as transaction costs, or explicitly handling periods of high volatility could lead to more robust and effective trading strategies.

Thirdly, the exclusion of a risk-free asset from the portfolio led to reduced performance in comparison to the benchmarks. Future work could include a risk-free asset, which would result in a more diversified and potentially less risky portfolio. In terms of real-world scenarios, portfolios tend to be composed of different asset classes. Although this thesis explored the performance of the algorithms in different classes, forthcoming research could investigate the performance of these algorithms in multi-asset class portfolios.

Finally, the current framework would benefit from a more user-friendly interface that allows users to provide their dataset and prediction function easily and explore the model’s explanations interactively. Another direction is to add intrinsic interpretability methods directly within the DRL algorithms, such as attention-based mechanisms [17], reducing the need for post-hoc explanation techniques.

References

- [1] Z. Bodie, A. Kane, and A. J. Marcus, *Investments*. McGraw-Hill Education, 10 ed., 2014.
- [2] J. Achiam, “Part 2: Kinds of rl algorithms,” 2018.
- [3] C. Molnar, *LIME*, ch. 14. Christoph Molnar, 3 ed., 2025.
- [4] F. Times, “Dow jones industrial average constituents.”
- [5] STOXX, “Euro stoxx 50 index.”
- [6] L. S. Exchange, “Ftse 100 constituents.”
- [7] J. Shen and M. O. Shafiq, “Short-term stock market price trend prediction using a comprehensive deep learning system,” *Journal of Big Data*, vol. 7, pp. 1–33, 12 2020.
- [8] K. Lei, B. Zhang, Y. Li, M. Yang, and Y. Shen, “Time-driven feature-aware jointly deep reinforcement learning for financial signal representation and algorithmic trading,” *Expert Systems with Applications*, vol. 140, p. 112872, 2 2020.
- [9] C. Ma, J. Zhang, J. Liu, L. Ji, and F. Gao, “A parallel multi-module deep reinforcement learning algorithm for stock trading,” *Neurocomputing*, vol. 449, pp. 290–302, 8 2021.

- [10] M. Hasan, M. Z. Abedin, P. Hajek, K. Coussement, M. N. Sultan, and B. Lucey, “A blending ensemble learning model for crude oil price forecasting,” *Annals of Operations Research*, pp. 1–31, 1 2024.
- [11] I. K. Nti, A. F. Adekoya, and B. A. Weyori, “A comprehensive evaluation of ensemble learning for stock-market prediction,” *Journal of Big Data*, vol. 7, pp. 1–40, 12 2020.
- [12] J. M. T. Wu, Z. Li, N. Herencsar, B. Vo, and J. C. W. Lin, “A graph-based cnn-lstm stock price prediction algorithm with leading indicators,” *Multimedia Systems*, vol. 29, pp. 1751–1770, 6 2023.
- [13] J. Moody and M. Saffell, “Learning to trade via direct reinforcement,” *IEEE Transactions on Neural Networks*, vol. 12, pp. 875–889, 7 2001.
- [14] H. Yang, X. Y. Liu, S. Zhong, and A. Walid, “Deep reinforcement learning for automated stock trading: An ensemble strategy,” *ICAIF 2020 - 1st ACM International Conference on AI in Finance*, 10 2020.
- [15] X.-Y. Liu, Z. Xiong, S. Zhong, H. Yang, and A. Walid, “Practical deep reinforcement learning approach for stock trading,” *NeurIPS 2018 AI in Finance Workshop.*, 11 2018.
- [16] M. Guan and X. Y. Liu, “Explainable deep reinforcement learning for portfolio management: An empirical approach,” *ICAIF 2021 - 2nd ACM International Conference on AI in Finance*, 11 2021.
- [17] D. G. Cortés, E. Onieva, I. Pastor, L. Trinchera, and J. Wu, “Portfolio construction using explainable reinforcement learning,” *Expert Systems*, vol. 41, p. e13667, 11 2024.

- [18] Y. Bathaee, “The artificial intelligence black box and the failure of intent and causation,” *Harvard Journal of Law & Technology*, vol. 31, p. 889, 2018.
- [19] A. B. Arrieta, N. Díaz-Rodríguez, J. D. Ser, A. Bennetot, S. Tabik, A. Barbado, S. Garcia, S. Gil-Lopez, D. Molina, R. Benjamins, R. Chatila, and F. Herrera, “Explainable artificial intelligence (xai): Concepts, taxonomies, opportunities and challenges toward responsible ai,” *Information Fusion*, vol. 58, pp. 82–115, 10 2019.
- [20] D. Gunning, M. Stefik, J. Choi, T. Miller, S. Stumpf, and G. Z. Yang, “Xai—explainable artificial intelligence,” *Science Robotics*, vol. 4, 12 2019.
- [21] D. Brigo, X. Huang, A. Pallavicini, and H. S. de Ocariz Borde, “Interpretability in deep learning for finance: a case study for the heston model,” *SSRN Electronic Journal*, 4 2021.
- [22] R. García-Céspedes, F. J. Alias-Carrascosa, and M. Moreno, “On machine learning models explainability in the banking sector: the case of shap,” *Journal of the Operational Research Society*, 2025.
- [23] T. P. Lillicrap, J. J. Hunt, A. Pritzel, N. Heess, T. Erez, Y. Tassa, D. Silver, and D. Wierstra, “Continuous control with deep reinforcement learning,” *4th International Conference on Learning Representations, ICLR 2016 - Conference Track Proceedings*, 9 2015.
- [24] V. Mnih, A. P. Badia, L. Mirza, A. Graves, T. Harley, T. P. Lillicrap, D. Silver, and K. Kavukcuoglu, “Asynchronous methods for deep reinforcement learning,” *33rd International Conference on Machine Learning, ICML 2016*, vol. 4, pp. 2850–2869, 2 2016.
- [25] J. Schulman, F. Wolski, P. Dhariwal, A. Radford, and O. K. Openai, “Proximal policy optimization algorithms,” *arXiv preprint arXiv:1707.06347*, 7 2017.

- [26] Y. Sato, “Model-free reinforcement learning for financial portfolios: A brief survey,” *arXiv preprint arXiv:1904.04973*, 4 2019.
- [27] B. Bruce and J. Greene, *Chapter 4 - Portfolio Construction*, pp. 133–178. Academic Press, 2014.
- [28] X. Li, Y. Li, Y. Zhan, and X.-Y. Liu, “Optimistic bull or pessimistic bear: Adaptive deep reinforcement learning for stock portfolio allocation,” *arXiv preprint arXiv:1907.01503*, 6 2019.
- [29] H. Markowitz, “Portfolio selection,” *The Journal of Finance*, vol. 7, pp. 77–91, 3 1952.
- [30] F. M. Clinic, “Mean variance portfolio theory.”
- [31] IBM, “What is machine learning (ml)?,” 9 2021.
- [32] V. François-Lavet, P. Henderson, R. Islam, M. G. Bellemare, and J. Pineau, “An introduction to deep reinforcement learning,” *Foundations and Trends in Machine Learning*, vol. 11, pp. 219–354, 12 2018.
- [33] I. Goodfellow, Y. Bengio, and A. Courville, *Deep Learning*. MIT Press, 2016. <http://www.deeplearningbook.org>.
- [34] C. Tang, B. Abbatematteo, J. Hu, R. Chandra, R. Martín-Martín, and P. Stone, “Deep reinforcement learning for robotics: A survey of real-world successes,” *Annual Review of Control, Robotics, and Autonomous Systems*, vol. 8, pp. 153–188, 8 2024.
- [35] K. Shao, Z. Tang, Y. Zhu, N. Li, and D. Zhao, “A survey of deep reinforcement learning in video games,” *arXiv preprint arXiv:1912.10944*, 12 2019.
- [36] D. Silver, A. Huang, C. J. Maddison, A. Guez, L. Sifre, G. V. D. Driessche, J. Schrittwieser, I. Antonoglou, V. Panneershelvam, M. Lanctot, S. Dieleman, D. Grewe,

- J. Nham, N. Kalchbrenner, I. Sutskever, T. Lillicrap, M. Leach, K. Kavukcuoglu, T. Graepel, and D. Hassabis, “Mastering the game of go with deep neural networks and tree search,” *Nature* 2016 529:7587, vol. 529, pp. 484–489, 1 2016.
- [37] R. Bellman, “A markovian decision process,” *Journal of Mathematics and Mechanics*, vol. 6, pp. 679–684, 1957.
- [38] R. Bellman, *Dynamic Programming*. Princeton University Press, 1 1957.
- [39] S. Thrun, “Efficient exploration in reinforcement learning,” tech. rep., Carnegie Mellon University, 1 1992.
- [40] V. Mnih, K. Kavukcuoglu, D. Silver, A. Graves, I. Antonoglou, D. Wierstra, and M. Riedmiller, “Playing atari with deep reinforcement learning,” *arXiv preprint arXiv:1312.5602*, 12 2013.
- [41] M. G. Bellemare, W. Dabney, and R. Munos, “A distributional perspective on reinforcement learning,” *34th International Conference on Machine Learning, ICML 2017*, vol. 1, pp. 693–711, 7 2017.
- [42] S. Fujimoto, H. V. Hoof, and D. Meger, “Addressing function approximation error in actor-critic methods,” *35th International Conference on Machine Learning, ICML 2018*, vol. 4, pp. 2587–2601, 2 2018.
- [43] T. Haarnoja, A. Zhou, P. Abbeel, and S. Levine, “Soft actor-critic: Off-policy maximum entropy deep reinforcement learning with a stochastic actor,” *35th International Conference on Machine Learning, ICML 2018*, vol. 5, pp. 2976–2989, 1 2018.
- [44] D. H. G. B. Tokyo and J. Schmidhuber, “Recurrent world models facilitate policy evolution,” *Advances in Neural Information Processing Systems*, vol. 31, 2018.

- [45] D. Silver, T. Hubert, J. Schrittwieser, I. Antonoglou, M. Lai, A. Guez, M. Lanctot, L. Sifre, D. Kumaran, T. Graepel, T. Lillicrap, K. Simonyan, and D. Hassabis, “Mastering chess and shogi by self-play with a general reinforcement learning algorithm,” *arXiv preprint arXiv:1712.01815*, 12 2017.
- [46] Y. Wu, E. Mansimov, S. Liao, R. Grosse, and J. Ba, “Scalable trust-region method for deep reinforcement learning using kronecker-factored approximation,” *Advances in Neural Information Processing Systems*, vol. 2017-December, pp. 5280–5289, 8 2017.
- [47] J. Schulman, S. Levine, P. Moritz, M. Jordan, and P. Abbeel, “Trust region policy optimization,” *32nd International Conference on Machine Learning, ICML 2015*, vol. 3, pp. 1889–1897, 2 2015.
- [48] G. E. Uhlenbeck and L. S. Ornstein, “On the theory of the brownian motion,” *Physical Review*, vol. 36, p. 823, 9 1930.
- [49] P. J. Phillips, C. A. Hahn, P. C. Fontana, A. N. Yates, K. Greene, D. A. Broniatowski, and M. A. Przybocki, “Four principles of explainable artificial intelligence,” *National Institute of Standards and Technology*, vol. Internal Report 8312, 9 2021.
- [50] P. Sequeira and M. Gervasio, “Interestingness elements for explainable reinforcement learning: Understanding agents’ capabilities and limitations,” *Artificial Intelligence*, vol. 288, p. 103367, 11 2020.
- [51] S. Greydanus, A. Koul, J. Dodge, and A. Fern, “Visualizing and understanding atari agents,” *Proceedings of the 35th International Conference on Machine Learning*, vol. 80, pp. 1792–1801, 7 2018.
- [52] S. M. Lundberg and S. I. Lee, “A unified approach to interpreting model predictions,” *Advances in Neural Information Processing Systems*, vol. 2017-December, pp. 4766–4775, 5 2017.

- [53] M. T. Ribeiro, S. Singh, and C. Guestrin, “‘‘why should i trust you?’’: Explaining the predictions of any classifier,’’ *Proceedings of the ACM SIGKDD International Conference on Knowledge Discovery and Data Mining*, pp. 1135–1144, 8 2016.
- [54] B. Amirshahi and S. Lahmiri, “Investigating the effectiveness of twitter sentiment in cryptocurrency close price prediction by using deep learning,’’ *Expert Systems*, vol. 42, p. e13428, 8 2023.
- [55] L. Breiman, “Random forests,’’ *Machine Learning*, vol. 45, pp. 5–32, 10 2001.
- [56] G. Louppe, “Understanding random forests: From theory to practice,’’ *arXiv preprint arXiv:1407.7502v3*, 7 2014.
- [57] S. Nembrini, I. R. König, and M. N. Wright, “The revival of the gini importance?,’’ *Bioinformatics (Oxford, England)*, vol. 34, pp. 3711–3718, 11 2018.
- [58] L. Shapley, *A value for n-person games*, pp. 307–317. Princeton University Press, 1953.
- [59] E. Štrumbelj and I. Kononenko, “A general method for visualizing and explaining black-box regression models,’’ *Lecture Notes in Computer Science (including sub-series Lecture Notes in Artificial Intelligence and Lecture Notes in Bioinformatics)*, vol. 6594 LNCS, pp. 21–30, 2011.
- [60] S. M. Lundberg, G. G. Erion, and S.-I. Lee, “Consistent individualized feature attribution for tree ensembles,’’ *Advances in Neural Information Processing Systems*, 2019.
- [61] C. Zhang, N. N. A. Sjarif, and R. Ibrahim, “Deep learning models for price forecasting of financial time series: A review of recent advancements: 2020–2022,’’ *Wiley Interdisciplinary Reviews: Data Mining and Knowledge Discovery*, vol. 14, p. e1519, 9 2023.

- [62] A. Millea and F. Guijarro, “Deep reinforcement learning for trading—a critical survey,” *Data 2021, Vol. 6, Page 119*, vol. 6, p. 119, 11 2021.
- [63] Z. Jia, Q. Gao, and X. Peng, “Lstm-ddpg for trading with variable positions,” *Sensors (Basel, Switzerland)*, vol. 21, p. 6571, 10 2021.
- [64] R. Chaudhary, “Advanced stock market prediction using long short-term memory networks: A comprehensive deep learning framework,” *Journal of Financial Data Science*, 5 2025.
- [65] X.-Y. Liu, “Finrl: A deep reinforcement learning library for automated stock trading in quantitative finance,” *SSRN Electronic Journal*, 11 2020.
- [66] Z. Jiang and J. Liang, “Cryptocurrency portfolio management with deep reinforcement learning,” *2017 Intelligent Systems Conference, IntelliSys 2017*, vol. 2018-January, pp. 905–913, 12 2016.
- [67] Z. Zhang, S. Zohren, and S. Roberts, “Deep reinforcement learning for trading,” *Papers*, 2019.
- [68] E. Parliament and C. of the European Union, “Regulation (eu) 2024/1689 of the european parliament and of the council of 13 june 2024 laying down harmonised rules on artificial intelligence and amending certain union legislative acts (artificial intelligence act),” 2024. Official Journal of the European Union, L 2024/1689, 12.7.2024.
- [69] Mandeep, A. Agarwal, A. Bhatia, A. Malhi, P. Kaler, and H. S. Pannu, “Machine learning based explainable financial forecasting,” *2022 4th International Conference on Computer Communication and the Internet, ICCCI 2022*, pp. 34–38, 2022.

- [70] C. A. Zhang, S. Cho, and M. Vasarhelyi, “Explainable artificial intelligence (xai) in auditing,” *International Journal of Accounting Information Systems*, vol. 46, p. 100572, 9 2022.
- [71] A. de La-Rica-Escudero, E. C. Garrido-Merchán, and M. Coronado-Vaca, “Explainable post hoc portfolio management financial policy of a deep reinforcement learning agent,” *PLOS ONE*, vol. 20, p. e0315528, 1 2025.
- [72] G. Brockman, V. Cheung, L. Pettersson, J. Schneider, J. Schulman, J. Tang, and W. Z. Openai, “Openai gym,” *arXiv preprint arXiv:1606.01540*, 6 2016.
- [73] A. Raffin, A. Hill, A. Gleave, A. Kanervisto, M. Ernestus, and N. Dormann, “Stable-baselines3: Reliable reinforcement learning implementations,” *Journal of Machine Learning Research*, vol. 22, pp. 1–8, 2021.
- [74] M. Kiran and M. Ozyildirim, “Hyperparameter tuning for deep reinforcement learning applications,” *arXiv preprint arXiv:2201.11182*, 1 2022.
- [75] L. Biewald, “Experiment tracking with weights and biases,” 2020. Software available from wandb.com.
- [76] W. Sharpe, “The sharpe ratio,” *The Journal of Portfolio Management*, vol. Fall, 1994.
- [77] W. . Biases, “Stable baselines 3 — weights & biases documentation,” 8 2025.
- [78] S. Falkner, A. Klein, and F. Hutter, “Bohb: Robust and efficient hyperparameter optimization at scale,” *35th International Conference on Machine Learning, ICML 2018*, vol. 4, pp. 2323–2341, 7 2018.
- [79] W. . B. Documentation, “Sweep configuration options,” 8 2025.
- [80] S. Learn, “Randomforestregressor — scikit-learn documentation.”

- [81] S. Learn, “Halvinggridsearchcv — scikit-learn 1.7.1 documentation.”
- [82] S. Learn, “1.11.2.5. feature importance evaluation — scikit-learn 1.7.1 documentation.”
- [83] Lime, “Lime tabular explainer — lime 0.1 documentation.”
- [84] SHAP, “shap.treeexplainer — shap documentation.”
- [85] SHAP, “shap.kernelexplainer — shap documentation.”
- [86] ranaroussi, “finance - python library.”
- [87] Q. Inc, “pyfolio.”
- [88] R. A. Martin, “Pyportfoliopt: portfolio optimization in python,” *Journal of Open Source Software*, vol. 6, no. 61, p. 3066, 2021.
- [89] European Parliament and Council of the European Union, “Directive 2014/65/eu of the european parliament and of the council of 15 may 2014 on markets in financial instruments and amending directive 2002/92/ec and directive 2011/61/eu (recast),” 2014. Official Journal of the European Union, L 173, 12.6.2014, p. 349-496.
- [90] Financial Conduct Authority, “Algorithmic trading compliance in wholesale markets,” technical report, Financial Conduct Authority (FCA), London, UK, 2018.
- [91] B. C. Society, “Bcs code of conduct,” 2022.
- [92] I. of Engineering and Technology, “Rules of conduct,” 2024.

Appendix A

Algorithms

A.1 Deep Reinforcement Learning Algorithms

Algorithm 1 Advantage Actor-Critic (A2C) Pseudo-code

Initialise:Global shared policy parameters θ and value parameters θ_v Number of parallel workers N Global step counter $T \leftarrow 0$ Hyper-parameters: discount γ , max steps per update t_{\max} , max total steps T_{\max} , learning rates α_π, α_v **repeat**Reset gradients: $d\theta \leftarrow 0, d\theta_v \leftarrow 0$

Initialise empty batch storage for all workers

for worker $i = 1$ to N **do** $t_{\text{start}} \leftarrow t$ Get initial state $s_t^{(i)}$ from worker i **repeat**Select action $a_t^{(i)} \sim \pi_\theta(\cdot | s_t^{(i)})$ Execute $a_t^{(i)}$, observe reward $r_t^{(i)}$ and next state $s_{t+1}^{(i)}$ Store $(s_t^{(i)}, a_t^{(i)}, r_t^{(i)})$ in worker i 's trajectory $t \leftarrow t + 1$ **until** terminal $s_t^{(i)}$ or $t - t_{\text{start}} == t_{\max}$

$$R^{(i)} = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if terminal } s_t^{(i)} \\ V_{\theta_v}(s_t^{(i)}) & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

for $j \in \{t-1, \dots, t_{\text{start}}\}$ **do**

$$R^{(i)} \leftarrow r_j^{(i)} + \gamma R^{(i)}$$

Accumulate gradients w.r.t. θ :

$$d\theta \leftarrow d\theta + \nabla_\theta \log \pi_\theta(a_j^{(i)} | s_j^{(i)}) (R^{(i)} - V_{\theta_v}(s_j^{(i)}))$$

Accumulate gradients w.r.t. θ_v :

$$d\theta_v \leftarrow d\theta_v + \nabla_{\theta_v} (R^{(i)} - V_{\theta_v}(s_j^{(i)}))^2$$

end for**end for**

// Synchronous update: wait for all workers to complete

Average gradients: $d\theta \leftarrow \frac{1}{N}d\theta, d\theta_v \leftarrow \frac{1}{N}d\theta_v$ Update $\theta \leftarrow \theta + \alpha_\pi d\theta, \theta_v \leftarrow \theta_v + \alpha_v d\theta_v$ $T \leftarrow T + N \times t_{\max}$ **until** $T > T_{\max}$

Algorithm 2 Proximal Policy Optimisation (PPO) Pseudo-code

Initialise:Policy parameters θ_0 and value function parameters ϕ_0 Global step counter $T \leftarrow 0$ Hyper-parameters: discount γ , GAE parameter λ , clipping parameter ϵ , learning rates α_π, α_v , epochs per update K_{epochs} , minibatch size $N_{\text{minibatch}}$, loss coefficients c_1, c_2 **for** $k = 0, 1, 2, \dots$ **do**Collect set of trajectories $\mathcal{D}_k = \{\tau_i\}$ by running policy π_{θ_k} in environmentStore transitions: $\{(s_t, a_t, r_t, s_{t+1}, \text{done}_t)\}$ **for** each trajectory τ in \mathcal{D}_k **do**Compute value estimates: $V_t = V_{\phi_k}(s_t)$ Compute TD residuals: $\delta_t = r_t + \gamma V_{t+1}(1 - \text{done}_t) - V_t$ Compute GAE advantages: $\hat{A}_t = \sum_{l=0}^{\infty} (\gamma\lambda)^l \delta_{t+l}$ Compute returns: $\hat{R}_t = \hat{A}_t + V_t$ **end for****for** epoch $e = 1$ to K_{epochs} **do**Shuffle dataset \mathcal{D}_k **for** each minibatch \mathcal{B} in \mathcal{D}_k **do**

$$r_t(\theta) = \frac{\pi_\theta(a_t|s_t)}{\pi_{\theta_k}(a_t|s_t)}$$

$$L^{\text{CLIP}}(\theta) = \frac{1}{|\mathcal{B}|} \sum_{t \in \mathcal{B}} \min \left(r_t(\theta) \hat{A}_t, \text{clip}(r_t(\theta), 1 - \epsilon, 1 + \epsilon) \hat{A}_t \right)$$

$$L^{VF}(\phi) = \frac{1}{|\mathcal{B}|} \sum_{t \in \mathcal{B}} \left(V_\phi(s_t) - \hat{R}_t \right)^2$$

$$L(\theta, \phi) = L^{\text{CLIP}}(\theta) - c_1 L^{VF}(\phi) + c_2 S[\pi_\theta]$$

$$\theta \leftarrow \theta + \alpha_\pi \nabla_\theta L^{\text{CLIP}}(\theta)$$

$$\phi \leftarrow \phi - \alpha_v \nabla_\phi L^{VF}(\phi)$$

end for**end for**Update policy: $\theta_{k+1} = \theta$ Update value function: $\phi_{k+1} = \phi$ $T \leftarrow T + |\mathcal{D}_k|$ **end for**

Algorithm 3 Deep Deterministic Policy Gradient (DDPG) Pseudo-code

Initialise:

Critic network $Q_{\theta^Q}(s, a)$ and actor $\mu_{\theta^\mu}(s)$ with random weights θ^Q, θ^μ

Target networks: $\theta^{Q'} \leftarrow \theta^Q, \theta^{\mu'} \leftarrow \theta^\mu$

Replay buffer \mathcal{B}

Hyper-parameters: discount γ , soft update rate τ , batch size N , exploration noise process \mathcal{N} , learning rates α_Q, α_μ , total episodes M , steps per episode T

for episode = 1 to M **do**

 Initialise random process \mathcal{N} for action exploration

 Receive initial state s_1

for $t = 1$ to T **do**

 Select action $a_t = \mu_{\theta^\mu}(s_t) + \mathcal{N}_t$

 Execute a_t , observe reward r_t and next state s_{t+1}

 Store (s_t, a_t, r_t, s_{t+1}) in \mathcal{B}

 Sample mini-batch $\{(s_i, a_i, r_i, s_{i+1})\}_{i=1}^N$ from \mathcal{B}

 Compute target: $y_i = r_i + \gamma Q_{\theta^{Q'}}(s_{i+1}, \mu_{\theta^{\mu'}}(s_{i+1}))$

 Update critic by minimising: $L(\theta^Q) = \frac{1}{N} \sum_i (y_i - Q_{\theta^Q}(s_i, a_i))^2$

 Update actor by policy gradient:

$$\nabla_{\theta^\mu} J \approx \frac{1}{N} \sum_i \nabla_a Q_{\theta^Q}(s_i, a)|_{a=\mu_{\theta^\mu}(s_i)} \nabla_{\theta^\mu} \mu_{\theta^\mu}(s_i)$$

 Update target networks:

$$\theta^{Q'} \leftarrow \tau \theta^Q + (1 - \tau) \theta^{Q'}$$

$$\theta^{\mu'} \leftarrow \tau \theta^\mu + (1 - \tau) \theta^{\mu'}$$

end for

end for

Algorithm 4 Twin Delayed Deep Deterministic Policy Gradient (TD3) Pseudo-code

Initialise:

Critic networks $Q_{\theta_1}(s, a)$ and $Q_{\theta_2}(s, a)$ with random weights θ_1, θ_2

Actor policy $\mu_\phi(s)$ with random weights ϕ

Target networks: $\theta'_1 \leftarrow \theta_1, \theta'_2 \leftarrow \theta_2, \phi' \leftarrow \phi$

Replay buffer \mathcal{B}

Hyper-parameters: discount γ , target policy noise $\tilde{\sigma}$, noise clip c , policy delay d , exploration noise σ , update rate τ , batch size N , total steps T

for $t = 1$ to T **do**

Observe state s_t

Sample action with exploration: $a_t = \mu_\phi(s_t) + \epsilon, \epsilon \sim \mathcal{N}(0, \sigma)$

Execute a_t , observe reward r_t and next state s_{t+1}

Store (s_t, a_t, r_t, s_{t+1}) in \mathcal{B}

Sample mini-batch $\{(s_i, a_i, r_i, s_{i+1})\}_{i=1}^N$ from \mathcal{B}

Sample clipped noise: $\tilde{\epsilon} \sim \text{clip}(\mathcal{N}(0, \tilde{\sigma}), -c, c)$

Compute target action: $\tilde{a}_{i+1} = \mu_{\phi'}(s_{i+1}) + \tilde{\epsilon}$

Compute target Q-value: $y_i = r_i + \gamma \min_{j=1,2} Q_{\theta'_j}(s_{i+1}, \tilde{a}_{i+1})$

Update each critic by minimising $L(\theta_j) = \frac{1}{N} \sum_i (y_i - Q_{\theta_j}(s_i, a_i))^2$

if $t \bmod d = 0$ **then**

Update actor by policy gradient: $\nabla_\phi J \approx \frac{1}{N} \sum_i \nabla_a Q_{\theta_1}(s_i, a) |_{a=\mu_\phi(s_i)} \nabla_\phi \mu_\phi(s_i)$

Update target networks:

$\theta'_j \leftarrow \tau \theta_j + (1 - \tau) \theta'_j$ for $j = 1, 2$

$\phi' \leftarrow \tau \phi + (1 - \tau) \phi'$

end if

end for

Algorithm 5 Soft Actor-Critic (SAC) Pseudo-code

Initialise:Actor network $\pi_\theta(a|s)$ with parameters θ Two critic networks $Q_{\phi_1}(s, a)$ and $Q_{\phi_2}(s, a)$ with parameters ϕ_1, ϕ_2 Target critic networks: $\phi'_1 \leftarrow \phi_1, \phi'_2 \leftarrow \phi_2$ Replay buffer \mathcal{D} Hyper-parameters: discount γ , temperature α (fixed or learnable), target entropy \mathcal{H} (if α is learnable), batch size N , learning rates $\lambda_Q, \lambda_\pi, \lambda_\alpha$, soft update rate τ **for** each training step **do**Observe state s_t Sample action: $a_t \sim \pi_\theta(\cdot|s_t)$ Execute a_t , observe reward r_t and next state s_{t+1} Store (s_t, a_t, r_t, s_{t+1}) in \mathcal{D} **if** time to update **then**Sample mini-batch $\{(s_i, a_i, r_i, s_{i+1})\}_{i=1}^N$ from \mathcal{D} **Update Critics:****for** $j = 1, 2$ **do**Sample next actions: $\tilde{a}_{i+1} \sim \pi_\theta(\cdot|s_{i+1})$

Compute target Q-values:

$$y_i = r_i + \gamma \left(\min_{k=1,2} Q_{\phi'_k}(s_{i+1}, \tilde{a}_{i+1}) - \alpha \log \pi_\theta(\tilde{a}_{i+1}|s_{i+1}) \right)$$

Update critic: $\phi_j \leftarrow \phi_j - \lambda_Q \nabla_{\phi_j} \frac{1}{N} \sum_i (Q_{\phi_j}(s_i, a_i) - y_i)^2$ **end for****Update Actor:**Sample actions with reparametrisation: $\tilde{a}_i = f_\theta(\epsilon_i; s_i)$ where $\epsilon_i \sim \mathcal{N}(0, I)$

Compute policy loss:

$$J(\theta) = \frac{1}{N} \sum_i [\alpha \log \pi_\theta(\tilde{a}_i|s_i) - \min_{j=1,2} Q_{\phi_j}(s_i, \tilde{a}_i)]$$

Update actor: $\theta \leftarrow \theta - \lambda_\pi \nabla_\theta J(\theta)$ **if** α is learnable **then****Update Temperature:**

$$J(\alpha) = \frac{1}{N} \sum_i \alpha (\log \pi_\theta(\tilde{a}_i|s_i) + \mathcal{H})$$

Update temperature: $\alpha \leftarrow \alpha - \lambda_\alpha \nabla_\alpha J(\alpha)$ **end if****Update Target Networks:** $\phi'_j \leftarrow \tau \phi_j + (1 - \tau) \phi'_j$ for $j = 1, 2$ **end if****end for**

A.2 Explainability Algorithms

Algorithm 6 Shapley Value Approximation

Initialise:

Number of iterations M

Instance of interest \mathbf{x}

Feature index j

Data matrix \mathbf{X}

Model \hat{f}

for $m = 1$ to M **do**

 Draw a random instance \mathbf{z} from data matrix \mathbf{X}

 Choose a random permutation \mathbf{o} of the feature indices

 Order \mathbf{x} according to \mathbf{o} : $\mathbf{x}_{\mathbf{o}} = (x_{(1)}, \dots, x_{(j)}, \dots, x_{(p)})$

 Order \mathbf{z} according to \mathbf{o} : $\mathbf{z}_{\mathbf{o}} = (z_{(1)}, \dots, z_{(j)}, \dots, z_{(p)})$

 Construct two new instances:

$\mathbf{x}_{+j} = (x_{(1)}, \dots, x_{(j-1)}, x_{(j)}, z_{(j+1)}, \dots, z_{(p)})$

$\mathbf{x}_{-j} = (x_{(1)}, \dots, x_{(j-1)}, z_{(j)}, z_{(j+1)}, \dots, z_{(p)})$

 Compute marginal contribution:

$$\phi_j^{(m)} = \hat{f}(\mathbf{x}_{+j}) - \hat{f}(\mathbf{x}_{-j})$$

end for

Compute average Shapley value:

$$\phi_j(\mathbf{x}) = \frac{1}{M} \sum_{m=1}^M \phi_j^{(m)}$$

Appendix B

State Representation

B.1 Technical Indicators

The following technical indicators are used to represent the state of the financial environment. They are calculated based on the historical price data of the assets in the portfolio.

- Simple Moving Average (SMA): Lagging indicator that smooths the price over a period of time. It is the unweighted mean of the previous k data points and is computed following:

$$\text{SMA}_t^k = \frac{1}{k} \sum_{i=t-k+1}^t p_i, \quad (\text{B.1})$$

where t is the current time step, k is the look-back period and p_i is the close price at time i . In this thesis, the SMA is calculated for 5, 10 and 20 days.

- Exponential Moving Average (EMA): Weighted moving average that gives more importance to recent prices with the goal of making it more responsive to new

information. It is calculated using the formula:

$$\text{EMA}_t^k = \begin{cases} p_t & \text{if } t = 0 \\ \frac{2}{k+1}p_t + \left(1 - \frac{2}{k+1}\right) \text{EMA}_{t-1}^k & \text{if } t > 0 \end{cases}, \quad (\text{B.2})$$

where k is the look-back period, p_t is the close price at time t and $\frac{2}{k+1}$ is the smoothing factor. In this thesis, the EMA is calculated for 5 and 10 days.

- Moving Average Convergence Divergence (MACD): Momentum indicator that shows the relationship between two moving average of an asset's price. The formula is:

$$\text{MACD}_t = \text{EMA}_t^{k_1} - \text{EMA}_t^{k_2}, \quad (\text{B.3})$$

where k_1 and k_2 are the look-back periods for the short-term (12 periods) and long-term (26 periods) EMAs, respectively, and p_t is the close price at time t .

- Relative Strength Index (RSI): Momentum indicator that measures the magnitude of recent changes to identify overbought or oversold conditions in the market. It is computed using smoothed moving averages for the upward change in closing price p_t , defined as $u_t = \max\{p_t - p_{t-1}, 0\}$:

$$\text{SMMA}_t^k(u_t) = \frac{1}{k}u_t + \left(1 - \frac{1}{k}\right) \text{SMMA}_{t-1}^k(u_{t-1}) \quad (\text{B.4})$$

and for the downward change, defined as $d_t = \max\{p_{t-1} - p_t, 0\}$:

$$\text{SMMA}_t^k(d_t) = \frac{1}{k}d_t + \left(1 - \frac{1}{k}\right) \text{SMMA}_{t-1}^k(d_{t-1}). \quad (\text{B.5})$$

Then, the Relative Strength Index (RSI) is given by:

$$\text{RSI}_t = 100 - \frac{100}{1 + \text{RS}_t}, \quad (\text{B.6})$$

where the relative strength RS_t is defined as:

$$RS_t = \frac{SMMA_t^k(u_t)}{SMMA_t^k(d_t)}. \quad (B.7)$$

- Commodity Channel Index (CCI): Momentum indicator that measures the deviation of the price from its historical average price over a period of time. It is calculated as:

$$CCI_t^k = \frac{TP_t^k - MA_t^k}{0.015 \cdot MD_t}, \quad (B.8)$$

where k is the number of periods (14 days), the typical price TP_t is:

$$TP_t = \sum_{i=t-k+1}^t \frac{p_i + h_i + l_i}{3}, \quad (B.9)$$

with p_t , h_t and l_t being the close, high and low prices at time step t , respectively, and the moving average MA_t^k is:

$$MA_t^k = \frac{1}{k} \sum_{i=t-k+1}^t TP_i \quad (B.10)$$

and the mean deviation MD_t is:

$$MD_t = \frac{1}{k} \sum_{i=t-k+1}^t |TP_i - MA_i^k|. \quad (B.11)$$

- Bollinger Bands: Volatility indicator that defines the trend-line for high and low prices based on the deviation of the asset from the moving average. The upper bands is calculated as:

$$BOLLUB_t^k = MA_t^k + m \cdot SD_t^k, \quad (B.12)$$

where k is the number of periods (20 days), m is the number of standard deviations

away from the moving average (2 standard deviations) and SD_t^k is the standard deviation of the typical price over the same period. Similarly, the lower band is calculated as:

$$\text{BOLLDB}_t^k = \text{MA}_t^k - m \cdot \text{SD}_t^k. \quad (\text{B.13})$$

- Average True Range (ATR): Volatility indicator that measures the average range of price movement over a period of time, usually 14 days. It is calculated as:

$$\text{ATR}_t^k = \frac{1}{k} \sum_{i=t-k+1}^t \text{TR}_i, \quad (\text{B.14})$$

where the true range TR_i is defined as:

$$\text{TR}_i = \max \{h_i - l_i, |h_i - p_{i-1}|, |l_i - p_{i-1}|\}, \quad (\text{B.15})$$

where h_i and l_i are the high and low prices of the asset at time i , respectively, and p_{i-1} is the close price of the asset at time $i - 1$. The true range finds the maximum of the following three:

- most recent period high minus most recent period low,
 - absolute value of the most recent period high minus the previous close, and
 - absolute value of the most recent period low minus the previous close.
- Average Directional Index (ADX): Trend indicator used to measure the strength of a trend by quantifying the price movement. It is calculated as:

$$\text{ADX}_t^k = \frac{1}{k} \sum_{i=t-k+1}^t \text{DX}_i, \quad (\text{B.16})$$

where the Directional Movement Index (DX) is defined as:

$$DX_t = \frac{100 \cdot |PDI_t - MDI_t|}{PDI_t + MDI_t} \quad (B.17)$$

with the Positive Directional Index (PDI) and Negative Directional Index (MDI) calculated as

$$PDI_t = \frac{100 \cdot SMMA_t^k(DM^+)}{ATR_t^k} \quad (B.18)$$

and

$$MDI_t = \frac{100 \cdot SMMA_t^k(DM^-)}{ATR_t^k}, \quad (B.19)$$

where DM^+ and DM^- are the positive and negative directional movements, respectively, calculated as:

$$DM^+ = \max(0, h_t - h_{t-1}) \quad (B.20)$$

and

$$DM^- = \max(0, l_{t-1} - l_t), \quad (B.21)$$

where h_t and l_t are the high and low prices of the asset at time t , respectively.

- Rate of Change (ROC): Momentum indicator that measures the percentage change in price between the current price p_t and the price p_{t-k} periods ago. It is given by the formula:

$$ROC_t^k = \frac{p_t - p_{t-k}}{p_{t-k}} \cdot 100. \quad (B.22)$$

In this thesis, the ROC is calculated for $k = 10$ days.

B.2 Macroeconomic Indicators

The following macroeconomic indicators are used to represent the state of the financial environment. They provide additional context about the market conditions and are calculated based on external data sources.

- Volatility Index (VIX) measures the market's expectation of future volatility based on options prices. This is only available for US markets.
 - VIX is calculated using the implied volatility of Standard and Poor's 500 Index (S&P 500) options.
 - VXD is calculated using the implied volatility of Dow Jones 30 Index (DW30) options.
- Currency index captures the impact from the monetary market on the stock market.
 - U.S. Dollar Index (DXY): United States (U.S.) dollar's value relative to a basket of foreign currencies.
 - Euro Index (EXY): Euro's value relative to a basket of foreign currencies.
 - British Pound Currency Index (BXY): British pound's value relative to a basket of foreign currencies.
- Interest rates reflect the cost of borrowing money and the return on savings. This is only available for US markets.
 - 3-Month Treasury Yield (IRX): Reflects the return on investment for a 3-month government bond.
 - 5-Year Treasury Yield (FVX): Reflects the return on investment for a 5-year government bond.

- 10-Year Treasury Yield (TNX): Reflects the return on investment for a 10-year government bond.

Appendix C

Hyper-parameter tuning

C.1 Hyper-parameter search space

For the five implemented Deep Reinforcement Learning algorithms, Table C.1 summarises the hyper-parameters that were tuned during the training process.

Table C.1: Hyper-parameter tuning configurations for different RL algorithms.

Model	Hyperparameter	Values / Range
A2C	Number of steps	{5, 10, 20, 30, 40}
	Entropy coefficient	Uniform[1×10^{-8} , 1×10^{-3}]
	Learning rate	Uniform[1×10^{-5} , 1×10^{-2}]
PPO	Number of steps	{128, 256, 512, 1024, 2048}
	Entropy coefficient	Uniform[1×10^{-8} , 1×10^{-3}]
	Learning rate	Uniform[1×10^{-5} , 1×10^{-2}]
	Batch size	{32, 64, 128, 256, 512}
DDPG	Batch size	{64, 128, 256}
	Buffer size	{50000, 100000, 200000, 500000}

Model	Hyperparameter	Values / Range
	Learning rate	Uniform[1×10^{-5} , 1×10^{-2}]
TD3	Batch size	{64, 100, 128, 256}
	Buffer size	{500000, 1000000, 2000000}
	Learning rate	Uniform[1×10^{-5} , 1×10^{-2}]
SAC	Batch size	{32, 64, 128}
	Buffer size	{100000, 500000, 1000000, 2000000}
	Learning rate	Uniform[1×10^{-5} , 1×10^{-2}]
	Learning starts	{500, 1000, 2000, 5000}
	Entropy coefficient	{auto, auto_0.1, auto_0.01}

C.2 Default Hyper-parameter Configuration

In addition, the default hyper-parameter configuration is shown in Table C.2.

Table C.2: Default hyper-parameter configurations.

Model	Hyperparameter	Values / Range
A2C	Number of steps	40
	Entropy coefficient	0.0003
	Learning rate	0.003
PPO	Number of steps	512
	Entropy coefficient	0.0005
	Learning rate	0.0015
	Batch size	64
DDPG	Batch size	256
	Buffer size	200000

Model	Hyperparameter	Values / Range
	Learning rate	0.005
TD3	Batch size	128
	Buffer size	500000
	Learning rate	0.001
SAC	Batch size	64
	Buffer size	500000
	Learning rate	0.001
	Learning starts	2000
	Entropy coefficient	auto_0.1

C.3 Default Hyper-parameter Selection

The choice of hyper-parameters is crucial for the performance of DRL algorithms. However, it is computationally expensive to perform hyper-parameter tuning for all combinations of algorithms, datasets and environment representations. Therefore, the default hyper-parameters used in the experiments are outlined in Table C.2. These hyper-parameters were selected based on preliminary tests conducted on a small dataset of five tickers (AAPL, CSCO, HON, MSFT, V) sampled from the DJIA and only the open, close, high and low prices as the environment representation.

The hyper-parameters were tuned according to the specifications in Table C.1 and the results were used to inform the default settings, outlined in Table C.2. For each of the five DRL algorithms, the hyper-parameter search was performed using Bayesian optimisation using the `wandb` library and a maximum number of runs set to 20. The training set was data from January 2016 to December 2022, the validation set started in January 2023 and ended in December 2023, and the test set was between January 2024

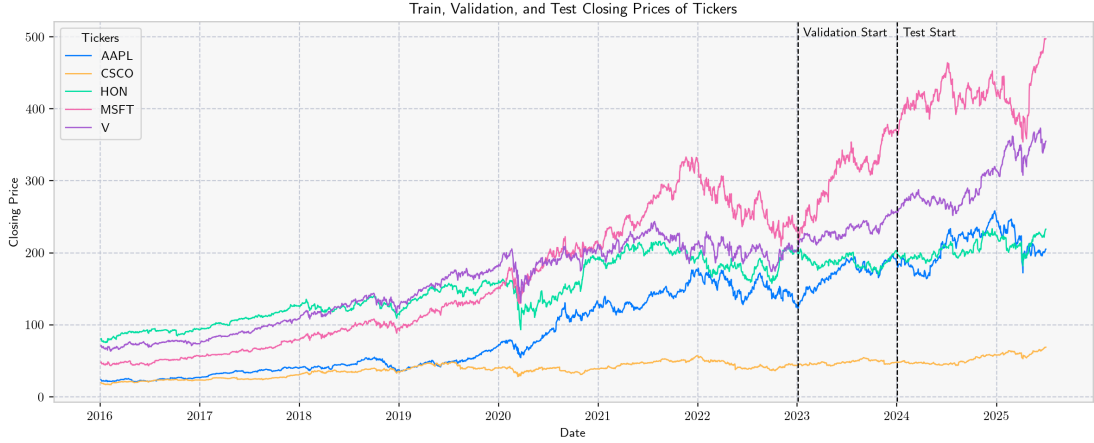


Figure C.1: Train-Validation-Test Split for the Hyper-parameter tuning on a sample of five assets from the Dow Jones Industrial Average index.

and June 2025. The dataset split is visualised in Figure C.1.

The **wandb** library provides an interactive website to visualise the results of the hyper-parameters in terms of the metric chosen for the optimisation and, if applicable, any other metrics that were chosen to be reported. In this case, the optimisation metric was the Sharpe ratio, as it balances the trade-off between risk and return, and additionally, the cumulative return was also reported. Figure C.2 shows the reported results for the hyper-parameter tuning of the A2C algorithm. It compares the chosen hyper-parameter with the resulting optimisation metric in the validation set.

The hyper-parameter tuning process was repeated for the other four algorithms, resulting in the hyper-parameters shown in Table C.2. Since the search had been done in the validation dataset, the best-performing models were evaluated and benchmarked against the test dataset to assess their generalisation performance, whose results are presented in Table C.3.

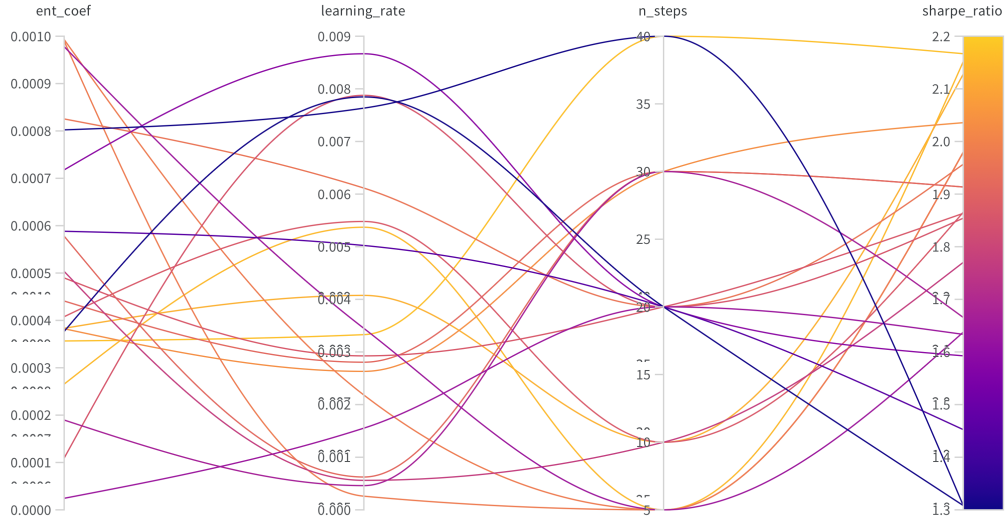


Figure C.2: Hyper-parameter tuning results for the A2C algorithm.

Table C.3: Results of hyper-parameter tuning on the test dataset.

Dataset	Annualised return	Cumulative return	Annualised volatility	Sharpe ratio	Max drawdown
A2C	0.1679	0.2598	0.1968	0.8859	-0.2186
PPO	0.2158	0.3375	0.1697	1.2364	-0.1630
DDPG	0.2231	0.3494	0.1763	1.2300	-0.1684
TD3	0.2174	0.3401	0.1731	1.2227	-0.1598
SAC	0.1717	0.2659	0.1762	0.9866	-0.1825
Mean	0.0989	0.1503	0.1896	0.5923	-0.1972
Min	0.2308	0.3609	0.1681	1.3193	-0.1559
Momentum	0.1074	0.1635	0.1868	0.6396	-0.2025
Equal	0.2010	0.3123	0.1758	1.1290	-0.1762

Appendix D

Datasets

D.1 Equities

D.1.1 Dow Jones 30

The Dow Jones Industrial Average (DJIA) is a stock market index with 30 companies listed on United States (U.S.) stock exchanges. The trading symbol is DJI and as of April 2025, its constituents are:

Table D.1: Constituents of the Dow Jones Industrial Average index as of April 2025. [4]

Symbol	Name	Sector	Industry
AXP	American Express	Financial Services	Credit Services
AMGN	Amgen	Healthcare	Drug Manufacturers - General
AAPL	Apple	Technology	Consumer Electronics
AMZN	Amazon	Consumer Cyclical	Internet Retail

Symbol	Name	Sector	Industry
BA	Boeing	Industrials	Aerospace & Defense
CAT	Caterpillar	Industrials	Farm & Heavy Construction Machinery
CRM	Salesforce	Technology	Software - Application
CSCO	Cisco	Technology	Communication Equipment
CVX	Chevron	Energy	Oil & Gas Integrated
DIS	Walt Disney	Communication Services	Entertainment
GS	Goldman Sachs	Financial Services	Capital Markets
HD	Home Depot	Consumer Cyclical	Home Improvement Retail
HON	Honeywell	Industrials	Conglomerates
IBM	IBM	Technology	Information Technology Services
JNJ	Johnson & Johnson	Healthcare	Drug Manufacturers - General
JPM	JP Morgan Chase	Financial Services	Banks - Diversified
KO	Coca-Cola	Consumer Defensive	Beverages - Non-Alcoholic
MCD	McDonald's	Consumer Cyclical	Restaurants
MMM	3M	Industrials	Conglomerates
MRK	Merck	Healthcare	Drug Manufacturers - General

Symbol	Name	Sector	Industry
MSFT	Microsoft	Technology	Software - Infrastructure
NKE	Nike	Consumer Cyclical	Footwear & Accessories
NVDA	NVIDIA	Technology	Semiconductors
PG	Procter & Gamble	Consumer Defensive	Household & Personal Products
SHW	Sherwin-Williams	Basic Materials	Specialty Chemicals
TRV	Travelers	Financial Services	Insurance - Property & Casualty
UNH	UnitedHealth	Healthcare	Healthcare Plans
V	Visa	Financial Services	Credit Services
VZ	Verizon	Communication Services	Telecom Services
WMT	Walmart	Consumer Defensive	Discount Stores

D.1.2 Euro Stoxx 50

The Euro Stoxx 50 Index (Euro Stoxx 50) is a stock market index that represents 50 of the largest companies in the Eurozone. The trading symbol is ST0XX50E and as of April 2025, its constituents are:

Table D.2: Constituents of the Euro Stoxx 50 index as of April 2025[5].

Symbol	Name	Sector	Industry
ADS.DE	adidas	Consumer Cyclical	Footwear & Accessories

Symbol	Name	Sector	Industry
ADYEN.AS	Adyen	Technology	Software - Infrastructure
AD.AS	Koninklijke Ahold Delhaize	Consumer Defensive	Grocery Stores
AI.PA	L’Air Liquide	Basic Materials	Specialty Chemicals
AIR.PA	Airbus	Industrials	Aerospace & Defense
ALV.DE	Allianz	Financial Services	Insurance - Diversified
ABI.BR	Anheuser-Busch InBev	Consumer Defensive	Beverages - Brewers
ASML.AS	ASML Holding	Technology	Semiconductor Equipment & Materials
CS.PA	AXA	Financial Services	Insurance - Diversified
BAS.DE	BASF	Basic Materials	Chemicals
BAYN.DE	Bayer	Healthcare	Drug Manufacturers - General
BBVA.MC	BBVA	Financial Services	Banks - Diversified
SAN.MC	Banco Santander	Financial Services	Banks - Diversified
BMW.DE	BMW	Consumer Cyclical	Auto Manufacturers
BNP.PA	BNP Paribas	Financial Services	Banks - Regional
BN.PA	Danone	Consumer Defensive	Packaged Foods
DB1.DE	Deutsche Börse	Financial Services	Financial Data & Stock Exchanges
DHL.DE	Deutsche Post	Industrials	Integrated Freight & Logistics

Symbol	Name	Sector	Industry
DTE.DE	Deutsche Telekom	Communication Services	Telecom Services
ENEL.MI	Enel	Utilities	Utilities - Diversified
ENI.MI	Eni	Energy	Oil & Gas Integrated
EL.PA	EssilorLuxottica	Healthcare	Medical Instruments & Supplies
RACE.MI	Ferrari	Consumer Cyclical	Auto Manufacturers
FLTR.L	Flutter Entertainment	Consumer Cyclical	Gambling
RMS.PA	Hermès International	Consumer Cyclical	Luxury Goods
IBE.MC	Iberdrola	Utilities	Utilities - Diversified
ITX.MC	Industria de Diseño Textil	Consumer Cyclical	Apparel Retail
IFX.DE	Infineon Technologies	Technology	Semiconductors
INGA.AS	ING Groep	Financial Services	Banks - Diversified
ISP.MI	Intesa Sanpaolo	Financial Services	Banks - Regional
KER.PA	Kering	Consumer Cyclical	Luxury Goods
OR.PA	L'Oréal	Consumer Defensive	Household & Personal Products
MC.PA	LVMH Moët Hennessy - Louis Vuitton	Consumer Cyclical	Luxury Goods

Symbol	Name	Sector	Industry
MBG.DE	Mercedes-Benz Group AG	Consumer Cyclical	Auto Manufacturers
MUV2.DE	Münchener Rückversicherungs- Gesellschaft	Financial Services	Insurance - Reinsurance
NOKIA.HE	Nokia	Technology	Communication Equip- ment
NDA- FI.HE	Nordea Bank	Financial Services	Banks - Regional
RI.PA	Pernod Ricard	Consumer Defensive	Beverages - Wineries & Distilleries
PRX.AS	Prosus	Communication Ser- vices	Internet Content & In- formation
SAF.PA	Safran	Industrials	Aerospace & Defense
SGO.PA	Compagnie de Saint-Gobain	Industrials	Building Products & Equipment
SAN.PA	Sanofi	Healthcare	Drug Manufacturers - General
SAP.DE	SAP	Technology	Software - Application
SU.PA	Schneider Electric	Industrials	Specialty Industrial Machinery
SIE.DE	Siemens	Industrials	Specialty Industrial Machinery
STLAM.MI	Stellantis	Consumer Cyclical	Auto Manufacturers
TTE.PA	TotalEnergies	Energy	Oil & Gas Integrated

Symbol	Name	Sector	Industry
DG.PA	Vinci	Industrials	Engineering & Construction
UCG.MI	UniCredit	Financial Services	Banks - Regional
VOW.DE	Volkswagen	Consumer Cyclical	Auto Manufacturers

D.1.3 FTSE 100

The Financial Times Stock Exchange 100 Index (FTSE 100) is a stock market index that represents 100 of the largest companies listed on the London Stock Exchange. The trading symbol is FTSE and as of April 2025, its constituents are:

Table D.3: Constituents of the FTSE100 index as of April 2025. [6]

Symbol	Name	Industry
III.L	3i Group	Financial Services
ADM.L	Admiral Group	Insurance
AAF.L	Airtel Africa	Telecommunications Services
ALW.L	Alliance Witan	Investment Trusts
AAL.L	Anglo American	Mining
ANTO.L	Antofagasta	Mining
AHT.L	Ashtead Group	Support Services
ABF.L	Associated British Foods	Food & Tobacco
AZN.L	AstraZeneca	Pharmaceuticals & Biotechnology
AUTO.L	Auto Trader Group	Media
AV.L	Aviva	Life Insurance

Symbol	Name	Industry
BAB.L	Babcock International Group	Aerospace & Defence
BA.L	BAE Systems	Aerospace & Defence
BARC.L	Barclays	Banks
BTRW.L	Barratt Redrow	Household Goods & Home Construction
BEZ.L	Beazley	Insurance
BKG.L	The Berkeley Group Holdings	Household Goods & Home Construction
BP.L	BP	Oil & Gas Producers
BATS.L	British American Tobacco	Tobacco
BT-A.L	BT Group	Telecommunications Services
BNZL.L	Bunzl	Support Services
CNA.L	Centrica	Multiline Utilities
CCEP.L	Coca-Cola Europacific Partners	Beverages
CCH.L	Coca-Cola HBC	Beverages
CPG.L	Compass Group	Support Services
CTEC.L	ConvaTec Group	Health Care Equipment & Services
CRDA.L	Croda International	Chemicals
DCC.L	DCC	Support Services
DGE.L	Diageo	Beverages
DPLM.L	Diploma	Industrial Support Services
EDV.L	Endeavour Mining	Precious Metals and Mining

Symbol	Name	Industry
ENT.L	Entain	Travel & Leisure
EZJ.L	easyJet	Travel & Leisure
EXPN.L	Experian	Support Services
FCIT.L	F&C Investment Trust	Collective Investments
FRES.L	Fresnillo	Mining
GAW.L	Games Workshop Group	Leisure Goods
GLEN.L	Glencore	Mining
GSK.L	GSK	Pharmaceuticals & Biotechnology
HLN.L	Haleon	Pharmaceuticals & Biotechnology
HLMA.L	Halma	Electronic Equipment & Parts
HIK.L	Hikma Pharmaceuticals	Pharmaceuticals & Biotechnology
HSX.L	Hiscox	Non-life insurance
HWDN.L	Howden Joinery Group	Homebuilding & Construction Supplies
HSBA.L	HSBC Holdings	Banks
IHG.L	InterContinental Hotels Group	Travel & Leisure
IMI.L	IMI	Industrial Engineering
IMB.L	Imperial Brands	Tobacco
INF.L	Informa	Media
ICG.L	ICG	Financial Services
IAG.L	International Consolidated Airlines Group	Travel & Leisure
ITRK.L	Intertek Group	Support Services

Symbol	Name	Industry
JD.L	JD Sports Fashion	General Retailers
KGF.L	Kingfisher	Retailers
LAND.L	Land Securities	Real Estate Investment Trusts
LGEN.L	Legal & General	Life Insurance
LLOY.L	Lloyds Banking	Banks
LMP.L	LondonMetric Property	Real Estate Investment Trusts
LSEG.L	London Stock Exchange Group	Financial Services
MNG.L	M&G	Financial Services
MKS.L	Marks and Spencer	Food & Drug Retailing
MRO.L	Melrose Industries	Aerospace & Defence
MNDI.L	Mondi	Containers & Packaging
NG.L	National Grid	Multiline Utilities
NWG.L	NatWest	Banks
NXT.L	NEXT	General Retailers
PERSON.L	Pearson	Media
PSH.L	Pershing Square Hold- ings	Financial Services
PSN.L	Persimmon	Household Goods & Home Con- struction
PHNX.L	Phoenix Group	Life Insurance
PCT.L	Polar Capital Technol- ogy	Investment Trusts
PRU.L	Prudential	Life Insurance

Symbol	Name	Industry
RKT.L	Reckitt Benckiser	Household Goods & Home Construction
REL.L	RELX	Media
RTO.L	Rentokil Initial	Support Services
RMV.L	Rightmove	Media
RIO.L	Rio Tinto	Mining
RR.L	Rolls-Royce Holdings	Aerospace & Defence
SGE.L	The Sage Group	Software & Computer Services
SBRY.L	J Sainsbury	Food & Drug Retailing
SDR.L	Schroders	Financial Services
SMT.L	Scottish Mortgage	Collective Investments
SGRO.L	SEGRO	Real Estate Investment Trusts
SVT.L	Severn Trent	Multiline Utilities
SHEL.L	Shell	Oil & Gas Producers
SMIN.L	Smiths Group	Industrial Engineering
SN.L	Smith & Nephew	Health Care Equipment & Services
SPX.L	Spirax Group	Industrial Engineering
SSE.L	SSE	Electrical Utilities & Independent Power Producers
STAN.L	Standard Chartered	Banks
STJ.L	St. James's Place	Financial Services
TW.L	Taylor Wimpey	Household Goods & Home Construction
TSCO.L	Tesco	Food & Drug Retailing
ULVR.L	Unilever	Personal Goods

Symbol	Name	Industry
UU.L	United Utilities	Multiline Utilities
UTG.L	Unite Group	Real Estate Investment Trusts
VOD.L	Vodafone Group	Mobile Telecommunications
WEIR.L	The Weir Group	Industrial Goods and Services
WTB.L	Whitbread	Retail Hospitality
WPP.L	WPP	Media

D.2 Commodities

The commodities market includes a variety of physical goods that are traded on exchanges. The following table lists a sample of 6 commodities:

Table D.4: List of 6 Commodities chosen for the portfolio.

Symbol	Name
CL=F	Crude Oil
NG=F	Natural Gas
GC=F	Gold
SI=F	Silver
ALI=F	Aluminum
HG=F	Copper

D.3 Currencies

The currencies market includes a variety of currency pairs that are traded on exchanges. The following table lists a sample of 10 currency pairs, selected for their trading volume.

Note that the trading symbols all have United States Dollar (USD) as the quote currency.

Table D.5: List of 10 currency pairs chosen for the portfolio.

Symbol	Name
EURUSD=X	Euro (EUR)/USD
GBPUSD=X	British Pound (GBP)/USD
JPYUSD=X	Japanese Yen (JPY)/USD
AUDUSD=X	Australian Dollar (AUD)/USD
CADUSD=X	Canadian Dollar (CAD)/USD
CNYUSD=X	Chinese Yuan (CNY)/USD
CHFUSD=X	Swiss Franc (CHF)/USD
HKDUSD=X	Hong Kong Dollar (HKD)/USD
KRWUSD=X	South Korean Won (KRW)/USD
INRUSD=X	Indian Rupee (INR)/USD

Appendix E

Experiment Results

In this Appendix, the results of the experiments conducted to evaluate the performance of the implemented algorithms under changing conditions are presented. Only the tables that do not fit in the main Results chapter 4 are included here.

E.1 Experiment: Algorithm Comparison

The following tables summarise the results of the algorithm comparison experiment conducted on the 5 datasets with OHLCV prices as the environment representation. The results for the A2C algorithm are presented in Table 4.1 in Section 4.4.1, whereas for the PPO, DDPG, TD3 and SAC algorithms, the results are presented in the following tables.

Table E.1: Algorithm comparison results for the PPO implementation across the different datasets under the indicators feature set.

Dataset	Annualised return	Cumulative return	Annualised volatility	Sharpe ratio	Max drawdown
Dow Jones 30	0.2035	0.3174	0.1461	1.3410	-0.1503
Euro Stoxx 50	0.1557	0.2438	0.1549	1.0117	-0.1706
FTSE 100	0.1246	0.1931	0.1244	1.0063	-0.1315
Commodities	0.2531	0.3990	0.1941	1.2600	-0.1522
Currencies	-0.0011	-0.0017	0.0493	0.0014	-0.0726

Table E.2: Algorithm comparison results for the DDPG implementation across the different datasets under the indicators feature set.

Dataset	Annualised return	Cumulative return	Annualised volatility	Sharpe ratio	Max drawdown
Dow Jones 30	0.2206	0.3454	0.1526	1.3826	-0.1560
Euro Stoxx 50	0.1292	0.2011	0.1556	0.8592	-0.1774
FTSE 100	0.1336	0.2076	0.1229	1.0822	-0.1248
Commodities	0.2168	0.3391	0.1811	1.1745	-0.1237
Currencies	0.0014	0.0021	0.0559	0.0528	-0.0802

Table E.3: Algorithm comparison results for the TD3 implementation across the different datasets under the indicators feature set.

Dataset	Annualised return	Cumulative return	Annualised volatility	Sharpe ratio	Max drawdown
Dow Jones 30	0.2478	0.3902	0.1567	1.4911	-0.1567

Dataset	Annualised return	Cumulative return	Annualised volatility	Sharpe ratio	Max drawdown
Euro Stoxx 50	0.1547	0.2423	0.1487	1.0420	-0.1645
FTSE 100	0.1325	0.2058	0.1231	1.0729	-0.1263
Commodities	0.2768	0.4386	0.1792	1.4537	-0.1224
Currencies	0.0026	0.0038	0.0438	0.0807	-0.0639

Table E.4: Algorithm comparison results for the SAC implementation across the different datasets under the indicators feature set.

Dataset	Annualised return	Cumulative return	Annualised volatility	Sharpe ratio	Max drawdown
Dow Jones 30	0.2358	0.3793	0.1540	1.4521	-0.1530
Euro Stoxx 50	0.1761	0.2771	0.1520	1.1437	-0.1718
FTSE 100	0.1319	0.2048	0.1279	1.0326	-0.1404
Commodities	0.0027	0.0041	0.0480	0.0806	-0.0704
Currencies	0.2563	0.4044	0.1778	1.3727	-0.1356

E.2 Experiment: Environment Representation

The table E.5 summarises the performance, according to the cumulative return, of the five algorithms in the four possible different environment representations: OHLCV prices, OHLCV prices with indicators, OHLCV prices with covariance, and OHLCV prices with indicators and covariance. The results are presented for three datasets: DowJones30, Commodities, and Currencies.

Table E.5: Environment representation experiment comparison according to the cumulative return. The colour correspond to the best performing per row, with blue for the DowJones30 dataset and green for the Commodities dataset.

Algorithm	Dataset	Simple	Indicators	Covariance	Complete
A2C	DowJones30	0.3491	0.3573	0.3464	0.3239
	Commodities	0.3695	0.4133	0.3883	0.4098
	Currencies	-0.0017	-0.0071	-0.0069	-0.0023
PPO	DowJones30	0.3174	0.3134	0.3221	0.2713
	Commodities	0.3990	0.3565	0.3689	0.3751
	Currencies	-0.0017	0.0033	0.0029	0.0083
DDPG	DowJones30	0.3454	0.4086	0.3128	0.3301
	Commodities	0.3391	0.3339	0.3616	0.4211
	Currencies	0.0021	0.0032	-0.0002	-0.0006
TD3	DowJones30	0.3902	0.3456	0.2571	0.2787
	Commodities	0.4386	0.3632	0.3292	0.4312
	Currencies	0.0038	-0.0022	-0.0023	-0.005
SAC	DowJones30	0.3703	0.3189	0.3774	0.3162
	Commodities	0.4044	0.3371	0.3958	0.3025
	Currencies	0.0041	0.0114	-0.0117	0.0179

Appendix F

Explainability Results

F.1 Feature Importance

Figure F.1 shows the top features grouped by asset according to the feature importance of the surrogate model.

Figure F.2 shows the mean feature importance for each type of feature, i.e. open, close, high and low prices, over the assets.

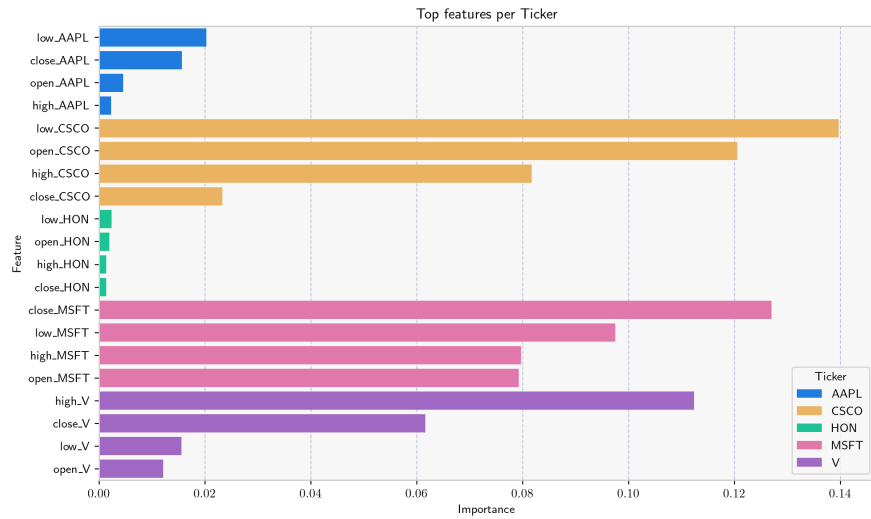


Figure F.1: Top features grouped by asset from the surrogate model according to feature importance.

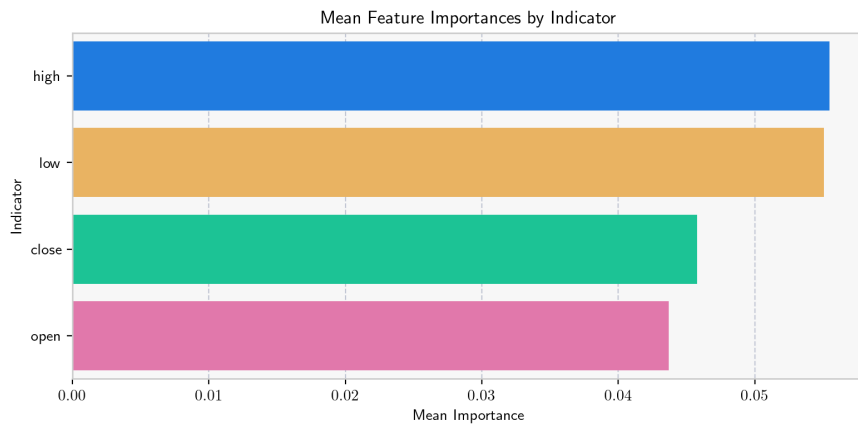


Figure F.2: Mean feature importance per type of feature from the surrogate model.

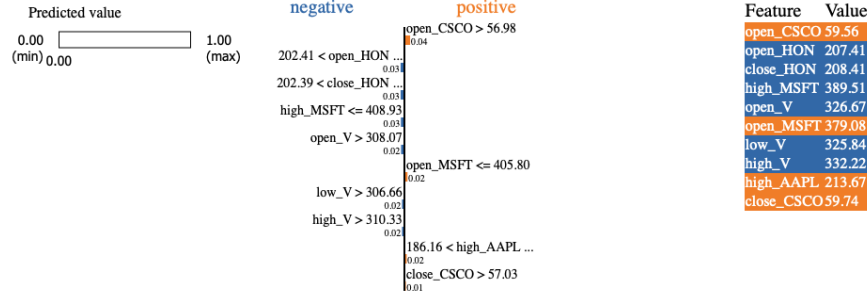


Figure F.3: LIME explanations for the A2C algorithm for a specific observation in the test dataset for the AAPL asset.

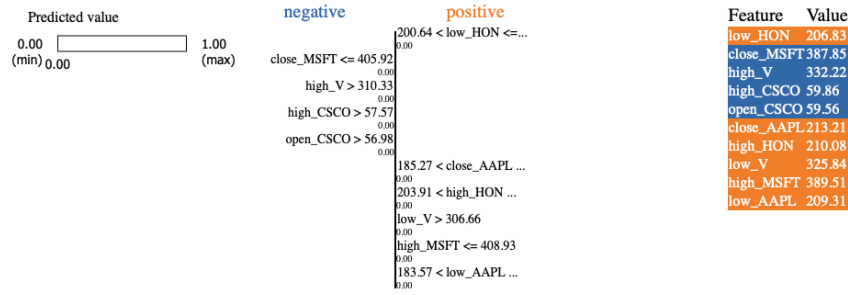


Figure F.4: LIME explanations for the A2C algorithm for a specific observation in the test dataset for the CSCO asset.

F.2 Local Importance Model-Agnostic Explanation Results

With the LIME analysis, the explanations for the A2C algorithm are provided. Since these are local observations, the following figures provide the explanation for the first time step on the test dataset of the assets not included in the main text. Values coloured in orange represent features that contribute positively to the prediction, while blue values indicate features that contribute negatively.

F.3 Shapley Additive Explanations

For SHAP, the explanations for the A2C algorithm are provided. For the case of explanations of a particular instance, the main text only includes the output for one of

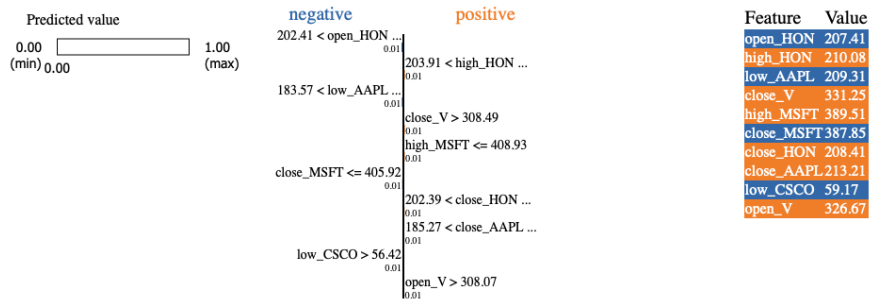


Figure F.5: LIME explanations for the A2C algorithm for a specific observation in the test dataset for the HON asset.

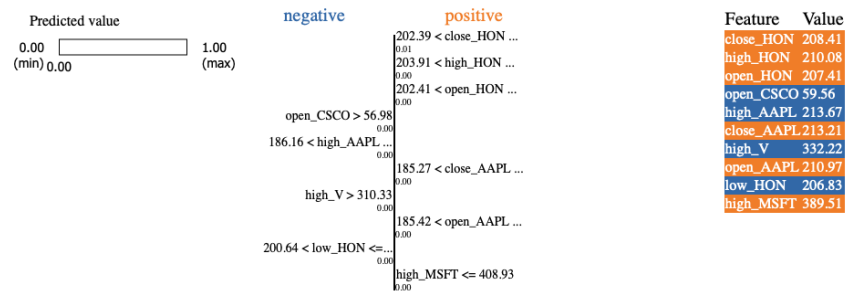


Figure F.6: LIME explanations for the A2C algorithm for a specific observation in the test dataset for the V asset.

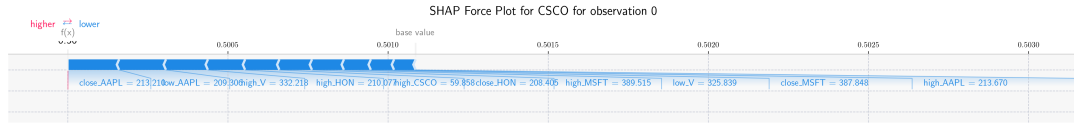


Figure F.7: SHAP force plot for the weight allocation of the CSCO asset for the A2C algorithm at the first time step of the test dataset.

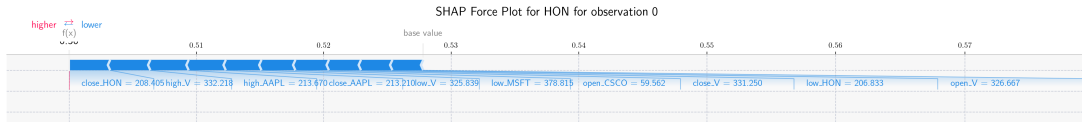


Figure F.8: SHAP force plot for the weight allocation of the HON asset for the A2C algorithm at the first time step of the test dataset.

the five assets in the portfolio, the following figures provide the explanations for the remaining assets. The explanations are presented as force plots, where the features that contribute positively to the allocation weight are shown in magenta and those that contribute negatively are shown in blue.

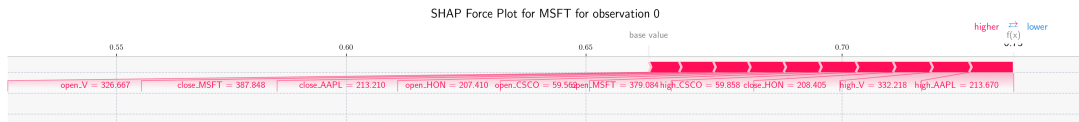


Figure F.9: SHAP force plot for the weight allocation of the MSFT asset for the A2C algorithm at the first time step of the test dataset.

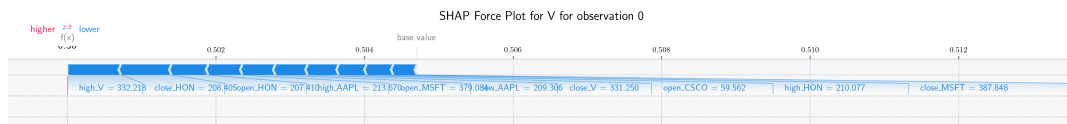


Figure F.10: SHAP force plot for the weight allocation of the V asset for the A2C algorithm at the first time step of the test dataset.

Appendix G

Code

The following section illustrates the code implementation of the project. It includes the main components of the codebase such as data download and pre-processing, model training and evaluation, benchmarking and explainability techniques.

The code is structured in a modular way, where each module corresponds to a specific functionality. The main components are:

- **Configuration:** This module manages the configuration settings that define the list of assets, the training-test periods, and other hyper-parameters.
- **Data Download and Pre-processing:** This module handles the downloading of datasets, cleaning, and pre-processing steps necessary for training the models.
- **Agents:** This module contains the implementation of the DRL agents capable of interacting with the environment, learning from it, and making decisions based on the observations received.
- **Environments:** This module defines the various environments in which the agents operate, including the state and action spaces, as well as the reward functions.

- **Benchmarking:** This module contains the implementation of the benchmarking strategies as well as the evaluation metrics used to assess the performance of the agents.
- **Explainability:** This module implements the explainability techniques used to interpret the agents' decisions and understand their behaviour.
- **Visualiser:** This module provides visualisations tools for the data, agents' performance, benchmarking comparisons and explainability results.
- **Optimisation:** This module contains the integration with hyper-parameter tuning libraries to find optimal configurations and track the experiments.

The modules are implemented as Python packages, each containing the necessary code and resources for its specific functionality. Additionally, the project contains a folder titled `examples`, where the main Jupyter notebooks to perform each of the separate tasks of this project are implemented. The directory structure is as follows:

```
xdl-portfolio/
|
+-- agents/
|   +-- __init__.py
|   +-- drl_agent.py
|   +-- tb_callback.py
|
+-- config/
|   +-- __init__.py
|   +-- config.py
|   +-- config_indicators.py
|   +-- config_tickers.py
```

```
|   +-- config_models.py
|
+-- environments/
|   +-- __init__.py
|   +-- env_portfolio_optimisation.py
|
+-- examples/
|   +-- findownloader.ipynb
|   +-- finpreprocessor.ipynb
|   +-- portfolio_optimisation.ipynb
|   +-- backtesting.ipynb
|   +-- hyperparameter_tuning.ipynb
|   +-- explainability.ipynb
|
+-- explainability/
|   +-- __init__.py
|   +-- explainability.py
|   +-- feature_importance.py
|   +-- lime_explainability.py
|   +-- shap_explainability.py
|
+-- optimisation/
|   +-- __init__.py
|   +-- wandb_opt.py
|
+-- pbenchmark/
|   +-- __init__.py
```



```

|   +-- portfolio_benchmark.py
|
+-- preprocessor/
|   +-- __init__.py
|   +-- findata_downloader.py
|   +-- findata_preprocessor.py
|
+-- visualisation/
|   +-- __init__.py
|   +-- benchmark_visualiser.py
|   +-- findata_visualiser.py
|   +-- model_visualiser.py
|   +-- shap_visualiser.py
|   +-- style.mplstyle
+-- README.md
+-- requirements.txt

```

The code is available as a GitHub repository at [XDL-Portfolio](#).

G.1 Configuration Module

Listing 1: config.py

```

1  from config import config_indicators, config_tickers
2
3  START_DATE = "2016-01-01"
4  END_DATE = "2025-07-01"
5
6  DATA_DIR = "data"
7  PLOT_DIR = "figures"
8  RESULTS_DIR = "results"
9  MODELS_DIR = "models"
10 LOGS_DIR = "logs"
11

```

```

12 INITIAL_AMOUNT = 100000 # Initial capital for the portfolio
13
14 TEST_NAME = "test"
15 DOW_30_NAME = "dow30"
16 EURO_STOXX_50_NAME = "eurostoxx50"
17 FTSE_100_NAME = "ftse100"
18 FX_NAME = "currencies"
19 COMMODITY_NAME = "futures"
20
21 DOW_30_INDEX = "^DJI"
22 EURO_STOXX_50_INDEX = "^STOXX50E"
23 FTSE_100_INDEX = "^FTSE"
24 SP_500_INDEX = "^GSPC"
25
26 EXCHANGE_NYSE = "XNYS" # New York Stock Exchange
27 EXCHANGE_LSE = "XLON" # London Stock Exchange
28 EXCHANGE_DAX = "XFRA" # Frankfurt Stock Exchange
29
30 TRAIN_START_DATE = START_DATE
31 TRAIN_END_DATE = "2022-12-31"
32 VAL_START_DATE = "2023-01-01"
33 VAL_END_DATE = "2023-12-31"
34 TEST_START_DATE = "2024-01-01"
35 TEST_END_DATE = END_DATE
36
37 # Configuration for indicators
38 USE_TECHNICAL_INDICATORS = True
39 USE_MACROECONOMIC_INDICATORS = True
40 # Configuration for covariance features
41 USE_COVARIANCE_FEATURES = False
42
43 # Environment representation columns
44 ENVIRONMENT_COLUMNS = [
45     "open",
46     "high",
47     "low",
48     "close",
49     "volume",
50 ]
51
52 if USE_TECHNICAL_INDICATORS:
53     ENVIRONMENT_COLUMNS += list(config_indicators.TECHNICAL_INDICATORS.keys())
54
55 if USE_MACROECONOMIC_INDICATORS:
56     MACROECONOMIC_INDICATORS = (
57         config_indicators.MACROECONOMIC_INDICATORS_DEFAULT
58     )
59
60 # Remove non-letter characters from string
61 ENVIRONMENT_COLUMNS += list(
62     map(
63         lambda x: "".join(
64             ch
65             for ch in x.split(".", 1)[0].lower()
66             if ch.isalnum() or ch == "_"

```

```

67         ),
68         list(MACROECONOMIC_INDICATORS.keys()),
69     )
70 )
71
72 if USE_COVARIANCE_FEATURES:
73     ENVIRONMENT_COLUMNS += ["covariance"]
74
75 # Tickers configurations
76 TICKERS = config_tickers.TEST_TICKERS
77 INDEX = None
78 TICKERS_NAME = TEST_NAME
79 EXCHANGE = EXCHANGE_NYSE
80
81 # Set dataset name based on the configuration
82 if (
83     USE_TECHNICAL_INDICATORS
84     and USE_MACROECONOMIC_INDICATORS
85     and USE_COVARIANCE_FEATURES
86 ):
87     DATASET_NAME = "dataset-indicators-covariance"
88 elif USE_TECHNICAL_INDICATORS and USE_MACROECONOMIC_INDICATORS:
89     DATASET_NAME = "dataset-indicators"
90 elif USE_COVARIANCE_FEATURES:
91     DATASET_NAME = "dataset-covariance"
92 else:
93     DATASET_NAME = "simple-dataset"
94
95 WANDB_ENTITY = "xdl-team"
96 WANDB_PROJECT = "xdl-portfolio"
97
98 SWEEP_CONFIG = {
99     "method": "bayes",
100     "metric": {"name": "sharpe_ratio", "goal": "maximize"},
101     "early_terminate": {
102         "type": "hyperband",
103         "s": 2,
104         "eta": 2,
105         "max_iter": 10,
106     },
107 }

```

Listing 2: config_tickers.py

```

1 TEST_TICKERS = [
2     "AAPL",
3     "CSCO",
4     "MSFT",
5     "HON",
6     "V",
7 ]
8

```

```

9   DOW_30_TICKERS = [
10       "AXP",
11       "AMGN",
12       "AAPL",
13       "AMZN",
14       "BA",
15       "CAT",
16       "CRM",
17       "CSCO",
18       "CVX",
19       "DIS",
20       "GS",
21       "HD",
22       "HON",
23       "IBM",
24       "JNJ",
25       "JPM",
26       "KO",
27       "MCD",
28       "MMM",
29       "MRK",
30       "MSFT",
31       "NKE",
32       "NVDA",
33       "PG",
34       "SHW",
35       "TRV",
36       "UNH",
37       "V",
38       "VZ",
39       "WMT",
40   ]
41
42   EURO_STOXX_50_TICKERS = [
43       "ADS.DE",
44       "ADYEN.AS",
45       "AD.AS",
46       "AI.PA",
47       "AIR.PA",
48       "ALV.DE",
49       "ABI.BR",
50       "ASML.AS",
51       "CS.PA",
52       "BAS.DE",
53       "BAYN.DE",
54       "BBVA.MC",
55       "SAN.MC",
56       "BMW.DE",
57       "BNP.PA",
58       "BN.PA",
59       "DB1.DE",
60       "DHL.DE",
61       "DTE.DE",
62       "ENEL.MI",
63       "ENI.MI",

```

```

64     "EL.PA",
65     "RACE.MI",
66     "FLTR.L",
67     "RMS.PA",
68     "IBE.MC",
69     "ITX.MC",
70     "IFX.DE",
71     "INGA.AS",
72     "ISP.MI",
73     "KER.PA",
74     "OR.PA",
75     "MC.PA",
76     "MBG.DE",
77     "MUV2.DE",
78     "NOKIA.HE",
79     "NDA-FI.HE",
80     "RI.PA",
81     "PRX.AS",
82     "SAF.PA",
83     "SGO.PA",
84     "SAN.PA",
85     "SAP.DE",
86     "SU.PA",
87     "SIE.DE",
88     "STLAM.MI",
89     "TTE.PA",
90     "DG.PA",
91     "UCG.MI",
92     "VOW.DE",
93 ]
94
95 FTSE_100_TICKERS = [
96     "III.L",
97     "ADM.L",
98     "AAF.L",
99     "ALW.L",
100    "AAL.L",
101    "ANTO.L",
102    "AHT.L",
103    "ABF.L",
104    "AZN.L",
105    "AUTO.L",
106    "AV.L",
107    "BAB.L",
108    "BA.L",
109    "BARC.L",
110    "BTRW.L",
111    "BEZ.L",
112    "BKG.L",
113    "BP.L",
114    "BATS.L",
115    "BT-A.L",
116    "BNZL.L",
117    "CNA.L",
118    "CCEP.L",

```

119 "CCH.L",
120 "CPG.L",
121 "CTEC.L",
122 "CRDA.L",
123 "DCC.L",
124 "DGE.L",
125 "DPLM.L",
126 "EDV.L",
127 "ENT.L",
128 "EZJ.L",
129 "EXPN.L",
130 "FCIT.L",
131 "FRES.L",
132 "GAW.L",
133 "GLEN.L",
134 "GSK.L",
135 "HLN.L",
136 "HLMA.L",
137 "HIK.L",
138 "HSX.L",
139 "HWDN.L",
140 "HSBA.L",
141 "IHG.L",
142 "IMI.L",
143 "IMB.L",
144 "INF.L",
145 "ICG.L",
146 "IAG.L",
147 "ITRK.L",
148 "JD.L",
149 "KGF.L",
150 "LAND.L",
151 "LGEN.L",
152 "LLOY.L",
153 "LMP.L",
154 "LSEG.L",
155 "MNG.L",
156 "MKS.L",
157 "MRO.L",
158 "MNDI.L",
159 "NG.L",
160 "NWG.L",
161 "NXT.L",
162 "PSON.L",
163 "PSH.L",
164 "PSN.L",
165 "PHNX.L",
166 "PCT.L",
167 "PRU.L",
168 "RKT.L",
169 "REL.L",
170 "RTO.L",
171 "RMV.L",
172 "RIO.L",
173 "RR.L",

```

174     "SGE.L",
175     "SBRY.L",
176     "SDR.L",
177     "SMT.L",
178     "SGRO.L",
179     "SVT.L",
180     "SHEL.L",
181     "SMIN.L",
182     "SN.L",
183     "SPX.L",
184     "SSE.L",
185     "STAN.L",
186     "STJ.L",
187     "TW.L",
188     "TSCO.L",
189     "ULVR.L",
190     "UU.L",
191     "UTG.L",
192     "VOD.L",
193     "WEIR.L",
194     "WTB.L",
195     "WPP.L",
196 ]
197
198 FX_TICKERS = [
199     "EURUSD=X",
200     "GBPUSD=X",
201     "JPYUSD=X",
202     "AUDUSD=X",
203     "CADUSD=X",
204     "CNYUSD=X",
205     "CHFUSD=X",
206     "HKDUSD=X",
207     "KRWUSD=X",
208     "INRUSD=X",
209 ]
210
211 COMMODITY_TICKERS = [
212     "CL=F", # Crude oil
213     "NG=F", # Natural gas
214     "GC=F", # Gold
215     "SI=F", # Silver
216     "ALI=F", # Aluminum
217     "HG=F", # Copper
218 ]

```

Listing 3: config_indicators.py

```

1 # List of technical indicators
2 TECHNICAL_INDICATORS = {
3     "close_5_sma": "Simple Moving Average over 5 days (1 week)",
4     "close_10_sma": "Simple Moving Average over 10 days (2 weeks)",

```

```

5     "close_20_sma": "Simple Moving Average over 20 days (1 month)",
6     "close_5_ema": "Exponential Moving Average over 5 days (1 week)",
7     "close_10_ema": "Exponential Moving Average over 10 days (2 weeks)",
8     "macd": "Moving Average Convergence Divergence",
9     "rsi": "Relative Strength Index over 14 days",
10    "cci": "Commodity Channel Index",
11    "boll_ub": "Bollinger Bands Upper Band",
12    "boll_lb": "Bollinger Bands Lower Band",
13    "atr": "Average True Range",
14    "adx": "Average Directional Index",
15    "close_10_roc": "Rate of Change over 10 days (2 weeks)",
16 }
17
18 # List of macroeconomic indicators
19 MACROECONOMIC_INDICATORS_DEFAULT = {
20     "^VIX": "Volatility Index (VIX)",
21     "DX-Y.NYB": "US Dollar Index (DXY)",
22     "^IRX": "3-Month Treasury Yield (IRX)",
23     "^FVX": "5-Year Treasury Yield (FVX)",
24     "^TNX": "10-Year Treasury Yield (TNX)",
25 }
26
27 MACROECONOMIC_INDICATORS_DW30 = {
28     "^VXD": "Volatility Index (VXD)",
29     "DX-Y.NYB": "US Dollar Index (DXY)",
30     "^IRX": "3-Month Treasury Yield (IRX)",
31     "^FVX": "5-Year Treasury Yield (FVX)",
32     "^TNX": "10-Year Treasury Yield (TNX)",
33 }
34
35 MACROECONOMIC_INDICATORS_EUROSTOXX50 = {
36     "^XDE": "Euro Currency Index (EXY)",
37 }
38
39 MACROECONOMIC_INDICATORS_FTSE100 = {
40     "^XDB": "British Pound Currency Index (BXY)",
41 }

```

Listing 4: config.models.py

```

1 # Stable Baselines DRL Models
2 from stable_baselines3 import A2C, DDPG, PPO, SAC, TD3
3
4 MODELS = {
5     "a2c": A2C,
6     "ppo": PPO,
7     "ddpg": DDPG,
8     "td3": TD3,
9     "sac": SAC,
10 }
11
12 # Training parameters for stock trading task

```



```

13 MODEL_KWARGS_STOCK = {
14     "a2c": {
15         "n_steps": 40,
16         "ent_coef": 0.0003,
17         "learning_rate": 0.003,
18     },
19     "ppo": {
20         "n_steps": 512,
21         "ent_coef": 0.0005,
22         "learning_rate": 0.0015,
23         "batch_size": 64,
24     },
25     "ddpg": {
26         "batch_size": 256,
27         "buffer_size": 200000,
28         "learning_rate": 0.005,
29     },
30     "td3": {
31         "batch_size": 128,
32         "buffer_size": 500000,
33         "learning_rate": 0.001,
34     },
35     "sac": {
36         "batch_size": 64,
37         "buffer_size": 500000,
38         "learning_rate": 0.001,
39         "learning_starts": 2000,
40         "ent_coef": "auto_0.1",
41     },
42 }
43
44 # Training parameters for portfolio optimisation task
45 MODEL_KWARGS_PORTFOLIO = {
46     "a2c": {
47         "n_steps": 10,
48         "ent_coef": 0.005,
49         "learning_rate": 0.0004,
50     },
51     "ppo": {
52         "n_steps": 2048,
53         "ent_coef": 0.005,
54         "learning_rate": 0.001,
55         "batch_size": 128,
56     },
57     "ddpg": {
58         "batch_size": 128,
59         "buffer_size": 50000,
60         "learning_rate": 0.001,
61     },
62     "td3": {
63         "batch_size": 100,
64         "buffer_size": 1000000,
65         "learning_rate": 0.001,
66     },
67     "sac": {

```

```

68         "batch_size": 128,
69         "buffer_size": 1000000,
70         "learning_rate": 0.0003,
71         "learning_starts": 100,
72         "ent_coef": "auto_0.1",
73     },
74 }
75
76 # Training visualisation config
77 train_visualisation_config = {
78     "a2c": {
79         "x": "time/iterations",
80         "y": [
81             "train/reward",
82             "train/policy_loss",
83             "train/entropy_loss",
84             "train/value_loss",
85         ],
86         "title": [
87             "Iterations vs Reward",
88             "Iterations vs Policy Loss",
89             "Iterations vs Entropy loss",
90             "Iterations vs Value loss",
91         ],
92     },
93     "ppo": {
94         "x": "time/iterations",
95         "y": [
96             "train/reward",
97             "train/policy_gradient_loss",
98             "train/entropy_loss",
99             "train/value_loss",
100         ],
101         "title": [
102             "Iterations vs Reward",
103             "Iterations vs Policy Gradient Loss",
104             "Iterations vs Entropy loss",
105             "Iterations vs Value loss",
106         ],
107     },
108     "ddpg": {
109         "x": "time/episodes",
110         "y": [
111             "train/reward",
112             "train/actor_loss",
113             "train/critic_loss",
114         ],
115         "title": [
116             "Episodes vs Reward",
117             "Episodes vs Actor Loss",
118             "Episodes vs Critic Loss",
119         ],
120     },
121     "td3": {
122         "x": "time/episodes",

```

```

123         "y": [
124             "train/reward",
125             "train/actor_loss",
126             "train/critic_loss",
127         ],
128         "title": [
129             "Episodes vs Reward",
130             "Episodes vs Actor Loss",
131             "Episodes vs Critic Loss",
132         ],
133     },
134     "sac": {
135         "x": "time/episodes",
136         "y": [
137             "train/reward",
138             "train/actor_loss",
139             "train/critic_loss",
140             "train/ent_coef_loss",
141         ],
142         "title": [
143             "Episodes vs Reward",
144             "Episodes vs Actor Loss",
145             "Episodes vs Critic Loss",
146             "Episodes vs Entropy Coefficient Loss",
147         ],
148     },
149 }
150
151 # Model hyperparameter sweep configuration
152 MODEL_SWEEP_CONFIG = {
153     "a2c": {
154         "n_steps": {"values": [5, 10, 20, 30, 40]},
155         "ent_coef": {
156             "distribution": "uniform",
157             "min": 1e-8,
158             "max": 1e-3,
159         },
160         "learning_rate": {
161             "distribution": "uniform",
162             "min": 1e-5,
163             "max": 1e-2,
164         },
165     },
166     "ppo": {
167         "n_steps": {"values": [128, 256, 512, 1024, 2048]},
168         "ent_coef": {
169             "distribution": "uniform",
170             "min": 1e-8,
171             "max": 1e-3,
172         },
173         "learning_rate": {
174             "distribution": "uniform",
175             "min": 1e-5,
176             "max": 1e-2,
177     },

```

```

178     "batch_size": {"values": [32, 64, 128, 256, 512]},
179 },
180 "ddpg": {
181     "batch_size": {"values": [64, 128, 256]},
182     "buffer_size": {"values": [50000, 100000, 200000, 500000]},
183     "learning_rate": {
184         "distribution": "uniform",
185         "min": 1e-5,
186         "max": 1e-2,
187     },
188 },
189 "td3": {
190     "batch_size": {"values": [64, 100, 128, 256]},
191     "buffer_size": {"values": [500000, 1000000, 2000000]},
192     "learning_rate": {
193         "distribution": "uniform",
194         "min": 1e-5,
195         "max": 1e-2,
196     },
197 },
198 "sac": {
199     "batch_size": {"values": [32, 64, 128]},
200     "buffer_size": {"values": [100000, 500000, 1000000, 2000000]},
201     "learning_rate": {
202         "distribution": "uniform",
203         "min": 1e-5,
204         "max": 1e-2,
205     },
206     "learning_starts": {"values": [500, 1000, 2000, 5000]},
207     "ent_coef": {"values": ["auto", "auto_0.1", "auto_0.01"]},
208 },
209 }

```

G.2 Data Download and Pre-processing Module

Listing 5: findata_downloader.py

```

1  from typing import List
2
3  import pandas as pd
4  import yfinance as yf
5
6
7  class FinancialDataDownloader:
8
9      def __init__(self, start_date: str, end_date: str) -> None:
10         """
11         Initialise the FinancialDataDownloader with a date range.
12         :param start_date: Start date for data download in 'YYYY-MM-DD' format.
13         :param end_date: End date for data download in 'YYYY-MM-DD' format.
14         """

```

```

15     self.start_date = start_date
16     self.end_date = end_date
17     self.data = None
18
19     def download_data(self, tickers: List[str]) -> pd.DataFrame:
20         """
21         Download financial data for the specified tickers within the date range.
22         :param tickers: List of stock tickers to download data for.
23         :return: DataFrame containing the downloaded financial data.
24         :raises Exception: If an error occurs during data download.
25         :raises ValueError: If no data is returned from the download.
26         """
27         if self.data is not None:
28             print("Data already downloaded. Returning existing data.")
29             return self.data
30
31         try:
32             data = yf.download(
33                 tickers,
34                 start=self.start_date,
35                 end=self.end_date,
36                 group_by="Ticker",
37                 auto_adjust=True,
38                 progress=False,
39             )
40         except Exception as e:
41             raise Exception(f"An error occurred while downloading data: {e}")
42
43         if data is None:
44             raise ValueError(
45                 "No data returned from the download. Please check the tickers and date
46                 ↪ range."
47             )
48
49         # Flatten the MultiIndex columns
50         data = (
51             data.stack(level=0, future_stack=True)
52             .rename_axis(["Date", "Ticker"])
53             .reset_index(level=1)
54         )
55
56         # Reset index to have a clean DataFrame
57         data.reset_index(inplace=True)
58
59         # Rename index columns
60         data.columns.rename("", inplace=True)
61
62         # Convert column names to lowercase
63         data.columns = [col.lower() for col in data.columns]
64
65         # Rename ticker column to 'tic'
66         data.rename(columns={"ticker": "tic"}, inplace=True)
67
68         self.data = data

```

```

68     print(
69         f>Data downloaded for {len(tickers)} tickers from {self.start_date} to
        ↪ {self.end_date}."
70     )
71     return data
72
73     def save_data(self, directory: str, filename: str) -> None:
74         """
75         Save the downloaded data to a CSV file.
76         :param directory: Directory where the CSV file will be saved.
77         :param filename: Name of the CSV file (without extension).
78         :raises ValueError: If there is no data to save.
79         """
80         if self.data is None or self.data.empty:
81             raise ValueError("No data to save. Please download data first.")
82
83         file_path = f"{directory}/{filename}.csv"
84         self.data.to_csv(file_path, index=False)
85         print(f>Data saved to {file_path}")
86
87     def load_data(self, directory: str, filename: str) -> pd.DataFrame:
88         """
89         Load financial data from a CSV file.
90         :param directory: Directory where the CSV file is located.
91         :param filename: Name of the CSV file (without extension).
92         :return: DataFrame containing the loaded financial data.
93         :raises FileNotFoundError: If the specified file does not exist.
94         :raises Exception: If an error occurs while loading the data.
95         """
96         file_path = f"{directory}/{filename}.csv"
97
98         try:
99             data = pd.read_csv(file_path)
100
101             # Convert date columns to datetime format if they exist
102             data["date"] = pd.to_datetime(data["date"])
103
104             # Sort the data by date, tic
105             data.sort_values(by=["date", "tic"], inplace=True)
106             # Reset index after sorting
107             data.reset_index(drop=True, inplace=True)
108
109             print(f>Data loaded from {file_path}")
110             self.data = data
111
112             return data
113
114         except FileNotFoundError:
115             raise FileNotFoundError(f>No data file found at {file_path}")
116
117         except Exception as e:
118             raise Exception(f>An error occurred while loading data: {e}")

```

Listing 6: findata_preprocessor.py

```

1  import itertools
2  from datetime import datetime
3  from typing import List, Optional
4
5  import exchange_calendars as ecals
6  import pandas as pd
7  from stockstats import StockDataFrame
8
9  from preprocessor.findata_downloader import FinancialDataDownloader
10
11
12 class FinancialDataPreprocessor:
13     def __init__(self, start_date: str, end_date: str) -> None:
14         """
15         Initialises the FinancialDataPreprocessor with a date range.
16         :param start_date: Start date for the data processing in 'YYYY-MM-DD' format.
17         :param end_date: End date for the data processing in 'YYYY-MM-DD' format.
18         """
19         self.start_date = start_date
20         self.end_date = end_date
21
22     def preprocess(
23         self,
24         data: pd.DataFrame,
25         exchange: str,
26         use_tech_indicators: bool = False,
27         tech_indicators: Optional[List[str]] = None,
28         use_macro_indicators: bool = False,
29         macro_indicators: Optional[List[str]] = None,
30         use_covariance: bool = False,
31         lookback_period: int = 252,
32     ) -> pd.DataFrame:
33         """
34         Preprocess financial data by cleaning it and adding additional features.
35         :param data: DataFrame containing financial data with columns ['date', 'tic',
36         ↪ 'open', 'high', 'low', 'close', 'volume'].
37         :param exchange: The stock exchange for which the data is being processed (e.g.,
38         ↪ 'NYSE', 'LSE').
39         :param use_tech_indicators: Whether to add technical indicators (Default is
40         ↪ False).
41         :param tech_indicators: List of technical indicators to add.
42         :param use_macro_indicators: Whether to add macroeconomic indicators (Default is
43         ↪ False).
44         :param macro_indicators: List of macroeconomic indicators to add.
45         :param use_covariance: Whether to add covariance features (Default is False).
46         :param lookback_period: The lookback period for calculating covariance features
47         ↪ (Default is 252).
48         :return: Processed DataFrame with additional features.
49         """
50         df = data.copy()
51
52         df = self._clean_data(df, exchange)

```

```

48
49     # Add day of the week column
50     df["day"] = df["date"].dt.dayofweek
51
52     if use_tech_indicators and tech_indicators:
53         df = self.__add_technical_indicators(df, tech_indicators)
54
55     if use_macro_indicators and macro_indicators:
56         df = self.__add_macro_economic_indicators(df, macro_indicators)
57
58     if use_covariance:
59         df = self.__add_covariance_features(df, lookback_period)
60
61     df = self.__rename_columns(df)
62
63     return df
64
65 def __clean_data(self, data: pd.DataFrame, exchange: str) -> pd.DataFrame:
66     """
67     Clean the financial data by ensuring all trading days are represented
68     and filling missing values appropriately.
69     :param data: DataFrame containing financial data with columns ['date', 'tic',
70     ↪ 'open', 'high', 'low', 'close', 'volume'].
71     :param exchange: The stock exchange for which the data is being processed (e.g.,
72     ↪ 'NYSE', 'LSE').
73     :return: Cleaned DataFrame with all trading days represented and missing values
74     ↪ filled.
75     """
76     trading_days = self.__get_trading_dates(exchange)
77     tickers = data["tic"].unique()
78
79     # Create a DataFrame with all combinations of trading dates and tickers
80     index = list(itertools.product(trading_days, tickers))
81     df = pd.DataFrame(index, columns=["date", "tic"]).merge(
82         data, on=["date", "tic"], how="left"
83     )
84
85     df = df.sort_values(by=["tic", "date"])
86
87     # Fill missing values with forward fill method and then backward fill
88     df["open"] = df.groupby("tic")["open"].ffill().bfill()
89     df["close"] = df.groupby("tic")["close"].ffill().bfill()
90     df["high"] = df.groupby("tic")["high"].ffill().bfill()
91     df["low"] = df.groupby("tic")["low"].ffill().bfill()
92
93     # Fill missing volumes with 0 to indicate no trading activity
94     df["volume"] = df["volume"].fillna(0)
95
96     return df
97
98 def __get_trading_dates(self, exchange: str) -> List[datetime]:
99     """
100     Get trading dates for a given exchange within a specified date range.
101     :param exchange: The stock exchange for which the trading dates are needed
102     ↪ (e.g., 'NYSE', 'LSE').

```



```

99         :return: List of trading dates as datetime objects.
100         """
101         dates = (
102             ecals.get_calendar(exchange)
103             .sessions_in_range(start=self.start_date, end=self.end_date)
104             .to_list()
105         )
106
107         # Convert to datetime objects
108         return [d.to_pydatetime() for d in dates]
109
110     def __add_technical_indicators(
111         self, data: pd.DataFrame, indicators: List[str]
112     ) -> pd.DataFrame:
113         """
114         Add technical indicators to the DataFrame based on the specified indicators.
115         :param data: DataFrame containing financial data with columns ['date', 'tic',
116         ↪ 'open', 'high', 'low', 'close', 'volume'].
117         :param indicators: List of technical indicators to add (e.g., ['macd', 'rsi',
118         ↪ 'cci']).
119         :return: DataFrame with additional technical indicators.
120         :raises Exception: If there is an error processing a specific indicator for a
121         ↪ ticker.
122         """
123
124         # Convert the dataframe to StockDataFrame
125         stock_df = StockDataFrame.retype(data.copy())
126         tickers = data["tic"].unique()
127
128         # Iterate over the indicators
129         for indicator in indicators:
130             indicator_df = pd.DataFrame()
131
132             # Iterate over each ticker
133             for ticker in tickers:
134
135                 # Extract the indicator data for the ticker
136                 try:
137                     ind_df = stock_df[stock_df["tic"] == ticker][indicator]
138                     ind_df = pd.DataFrame(ind_df)
139                     ind_df["tic"] = ticker
140                     ind_df["date"] = data[data["tic"] == ticker]["date"].values
141
142                     indicator_df = pd.concat(
143                         [indicator_df, ind_df], ignore_index=True
144                     )
145                 except Exception as e:
146                     print(
147                         f"Error processing indicator '{indicator}' for ticker
148                         ↪ '{ticker}': {e}"
149                     )
150
151             data = data.merge(indicator_df, on=["tic", "date"], how="left")
152
153         data.fillna(0, inplace=True) # Fill NaN values with 0

```

```

149
150     return data
151
152     def __add_macroeconomic_indicators(
153         self, data: pd.DataFrame, indicators: List[str]
154     ) -> pd.DataFrame:
155         """
156         Add macroeconomic indicators to the DataFrame based on the specified indicators.
157         :param data: DataFrame containing financial data with columns ['date', 'tic',
158         ↪ 'open', 'high', 'low', 'close', 'volume'].
159         :param indicators: List of macroeconomic indicators to add (e.g., ['^VIX']).
160         :return: DataFrame with additional macroeconomic indicators.
161         """
162
163         for indicator in indicators:
164             findownloader = FinancialDataDownloader(
165                 self.start_date, self.end_date
166             )
167             ind_df = findownloader.download_data([indicator])
168             indicator_df = ind_df[["date", "close"]].rename(
169                 columns={"close": indicator}
170             )
171
172             data = data.merge(indicator_df, on=["date"])
173
174     return data
175
176     def __add_covariance_features(
177         self, data: pd.DataFrame, lookback_period: int = 252
178     ) -> pd.DataFrame:
179         """
180         Add covariance features to the DataFrame.
181         :param data: DataFrame containing financial data.
182         :param lookback_period: The lookback period for calculating covariance features.
183         :return: DataFrame with additional covariance features.
184         """
185
186         covariance_df = pd.DataFrame()
187
188         dates = data.date.unique()
189         tics = data.tic.unique()
190
191         for i in range(len(dates)):
192             # If the date is smaller than the lookback period,
193             # do not calculate the covariance and set it to 0
194             if i < lookback_period:
195                 cov_df = pd.DataFrame(
196                     {
197                         "date": dates[i],
198                         "tic": tics,
199                         "covariance": [
200                             [0] * len(tics) for _ in range(len(tics))
201                         ],
202                     }
203                 )

```

```

202     # Calculate the covariance features for the current lookback period
203     else:
204         # Get the start and end dates for the lookback period
205         start_date = dates[i - lookback_period]
206         end_date = dates[i]
207
208         # Retrieve the relevant data for the lookback period
209         window = data[
210             (data.date >= start_date) & (data.date < end_date)
211         ]
212         # Pivot the table to get the price data for the lookback period
213         price_lookback = window.pivot_table(
214             index="date", columns="tic", values="close"
215         )
216
217         # Compute the covariance matrix
218         cov_matrix = price_lookback.cov()
219         cov_df = pd.DataFrame(
220             {
221                 "date": dates[i],
222                 "tic": tics,
223                 "covariance": cov_matrix.values.tolist(),
224             }
225         )
226
227         # Append to the covariance dataframe
228         covariance_df = pd.concat(
229             [covariance_df, cov_df], ignore_index=True
230         )
231
232         # Merge the data on date and tic
233         data = data.merge(covariance_df, on=["date", "tic"])
234
235     return data
236
237     def __rename_columns(self, data: pd.DataFrame) -> pd.DataFrame:
238         """
239         Rename columns to a consistent format to work with FinRL library.
240         :param data: DataFrame containing financial data with columns ['date', 'tic',
241         ↪ 'open', 'high', 'low', 'close', 'volume'].
242         :return: DataFrame with renamed columns.
243         """
244
245         # Convert column names
246         # 1. Split by dot and take the first part
247         # 2. Convert to lowercase
248         # 3. Remove non-alphanumeric characters
249         data.columns = (
250             data.columns.str.split(".")
251             .str[0]
252             .str.lower()
253             .str.replace(r"[^a-z0-9_]", "", regex=True)
254         )

```

```

255         return data
256
257     def __set_index(self, data: pd.DataFrame) -> pd.DataFrame:
258         """
259         Set the index of the DataFrame to a number from 0 to the number of distinct
260         ↪ dates in the dataset.
261         This is useful for ensuring that the index is consistent with the FinRL
262         ↪ library's expectations.
263         :param data: DataFrame containing financial data.
264         :return: DataFrame with the index set to a number from 0 to the number of
265         ↪ distinct dates.
266         """
267
268         data.sort_values(by=["date", "tic"], inplace=True)
269
270         # Set the index to a number from 0 to number of distinct dates in the dataset
271         data.set_index(data["date"].astype("category").cat.codes, inplace=True)
272
273         return data
274
275     def split_train_test(
276         self, data: pd.DataFrame, test_start_date: pd.Timestamp | str
277     ) -> tuple[pd.DataFrame, pd.DataFrame]:
278         """
279         Split the data into training and testing sets based on the given test start
280         ↪ date.
281         :param data: DataFrame containing financial data.
282         :param test_start_date: The start date for the testing set. Data after this date
283         ↪ will be used for testing.
284         :return: A tuple containing the training DataFrame and the testing DataFrame.
285         """
286
287         # Ensure test start date is part of the DataFrame
288         test_start_date = pd.to_datetime(test_start_date)
289         if "date" not in data.columns:
290             raise ValueError("Data must contain a 'date' column for splitting.")
291         if (
292             test_start_date < data["date"].min()
293             or test_start_date > data["date"].max()
294         ):
295             raise ValueError(
296                 f"The test start date is outside of the 'date' column values."
297             )
298
299         # Split the data into training and testing sets
300         train_data = data[data["date"] < test_start_date].copy()
301         test_data = data[data["date"] >= test_start_date].copy()
302
303         train_data = self.__set_index(train_data)
304         test_data = self.__set_index(test_data)
305
306         return train_data, test_data
307
308     def save_train_test_data(

```

```

304         self,
305         train_data: pd.DataFrame,
306         test_data: pd.DataFrame,
307         directory: str,
308         filename: str,
309     ) -> None:
310         """
311         Save the training and testing data to CSV files.
312         :param train_data: DataFrame containing training data.
313         :param test_data: DataFrame containing testing data.
314         :param directory: Directory where the CSV files will be saved.
315         :param filename: Base filename for the CSV files (without extension).
316         """
317         train_file_path = f"{directory}/{filename}_train.csv"
318         test_file_path = f"{directory}/{filename}_trade.csv"
319
320         train_data.to_csv(train_file_path, index=False)
321         test_data.to_csv(test_file_path, index=False)
322
323         print(f"Train data saved to {train_file_path}")
324         print(f"Test data saved to {test_file_path}")
325
326     def __load_file(self, filepath: str) -> pd.DataFrame:
327         """
328         Load a CSV file into a DataFrame.
329         :param filepath: Path to the CSV file.
330         :return: DataFrame containing the data from the CSV file.
331         :raises FileNotFoundError: If the file does not exist.
332         :raises ValueError: If the 'tic' column is missing from the data.
333         """
334         try:
335             data = pd.read_csv(filepath)
336             # Convert date columns to datetime format if they exist
337             if "date" in data.columns:
338                 data["date"] = pd.to_datetime(data["date"])
339
340             # Ensure the 'tic' column exists
341             if "tic" not in data.columns:
342                 raise ValueError("The 'tic' column is missing from the data.")
343
344             # Set the index
345             data = self.__set_index(data)
346
347             return data
348
349         except FileNotFoundError:
350             raise FileNotFoundError(f"No file found at {filepath}")
351
352     def load_train_test_data(
353         self, directory: str, filename: str
354     ) -> tuple[pd.DataFrame, pd.DataFrame]:
355         """
356         Load the training and testing data from CSV files.
357         :param directory: Directory where the CSV files are located.
358         :param filename: Base filename for the CSV files (without extension).

```

```

359         :return: A tuple containing the training DataFrame and the testing DataFrame.
360         """
361
362         train_data = self.__load_file(f"{directory}/{filename}_train.csv")
363         test_data = self.__load_file(f"{directory}/{filename}_trade.csv")
364
365         return train_data, test_data

```

G.3 Agents Module

Listing 7: drl_agent.py

```

1  from typing import Literal, Optional, Tuple
2
3  import pandas as pd
4  from stable_baselines3.common.base_class import BaseAlgorithm
5  from stable_baselines3.common.logger import configure
6  from stable_baselines3.common.vec_env import DummyVecEnv
7  from wandb.integration.sb3 import WandbCallback
8  from wandb.sdk.wandb_run import Run
9
10 from agents.tb_callback import TensorboardCallback
11 from config import config_models
12
13
14 class DRLAgent:
15     def __init__(self, run: Optional[Run] = None):
16         """
17         Initialises the DRL agent.
18         """
19         self.run = run
20
21     def get_model(
22         self,
23         model_name: str,
24         environment: DummyVecEnv,
25         use_case: Literal["stock-trading", "portfolio-optimisation"],
26         directory: Optional[str] = None,
27         model_kwargs: Optional[dict] = None,
28         policy: str = "MlpPolicy",
29         policy_kwargs: Optional[dict] = None,
30         seed: Optional[int] = None,
31         verbose: int = 1,
32     ) -> BaseAlgorithm:
33         """
34         Returns a DRL model based on the specified model name and parameters.
35         :param model_name: The name of the DRL model to create.
36         :param environment: The environment in which the model will be trained.
37         :param use_case: The use case for the model (e.g., stock trading, portfolio
38         ↪ optimization).
39         :param directory: The directory where the tensorboard logs will be saved.

```

```

39         :param model_kwargs: Additional keyword arguments for the model.
40         :param policy: The policy to use for the model.
41         :param policy_kwargs: Additional keyword arguments for the policy.
42         :param seed: Random seed for reproducibility.
43         :param verbose: Verbosity level for the model.
44         :return: An instance of the specified DRL model.
45         :raises ValueError: If the model name is not supported.
46         """
47
48         if model_name not in config_models.MODELS:
49             raise ValueError(
50                 f"Model {model_name} is not supported. Choose from
51                 ↪ {config_models.MODELS.keys()}."
52             )
53
54         if model_kwargs is None:
55             if use_case == "stock-trading":
56                 model_kwargs = config_models.MODEL_KWARGS_STOCK[model_name]
57             elif use_case == "portfolio-optimisation":
58                 model_kwargs = config_models.MODEL_KWARGS_PORTFOLIO[model_name]
59
60         if verbose:
61             print(f"Model arguments: {model_kwargs}")
62
63         if not self.run:
64             if not directory:
65                 raise ValueError(
66                     "Directory must be specified if run is not provided."
67                 )
68
69             tensorboard_log = f"{directory}/{model_name}"
70
71             logger = configure(tensorboard_log, ["csv", "tensorboard"])
72
73             model = config_models.MODELS[model_name](
74                 policy=policy,
75                 env=environment,
76                 verbose=verbose,
77                 tensorboard_log=tensorboard_log,
78                 seed=seed,
79                 policy_kwargs=policy_kwargs,
80                 **model_kwargs,
81             )
82
83             model.set_logger(logger)
84
85         else:
86             model = config_models.MODELS[model_name](
87                 policy=policy,
88                 env=environment,
89                 verbose=verbose,
90                 seed=seed,
91                 policy_kwargs=policy_kwargs,
92                 **model_kwargs,

```

```

92         )
93
94     return model
95
96     def train(
97         self,
98         model: BaseAlgorithm,
99         tb_log_name: str,
100         log_interval: int = 20,
101         total_timesteps: int = 100000,
102         callback: TensorboardCallback | WandbCallback = TensorboardCallback(),
103     ) -> BaseAlgorithm:
104         """
105         Trains the DRL model with the specified parameters.
106         :param model: The DRL model to train.
107         :param tb_log_name: The name for the tensorboard log.
108         :param log_interval: The interval for logging training progress.
109         :param total_timesteps: The total number of timesteps for training.
110         :param callback: Callback function for additional logging or actions during
111         ↪ training.
112         :return: The trained DRL model.
113         """
114
115         model = model.learn(
116             total_timesteps=total_timesteps,
117             log_interval=log_interval,
118             tb_log_name=tb_log_name,
119             callback=callback,
120         )
121
122         return model
123
124     def predict(
125         self,
126         model: BaseAlgorithm,
127         environment,
128         deterministic: bool = True,
129     ) -> Tuple[pd.DataFrame, pd.DataFrame]:
130         """
131         Makes a prediction given the provided model and environment.
132         :param model: The trained DRL model.
133         :param environment: The environment in which to run the prediction.
134         :param deterministic: Whether to use deterministic actions.
135         :return: The account memory and actions memory after the prediction.
136         """
137
138         test_env, test_obs = environment.get_sb_env()
139         account_memory = []
140         actions_memory = []
141
142         test_env.reset()
143         max_steps = environment.df.index.nunique()
144
145         for i in range(max_steps):
146             action, _ = model.predict(test_obs, deterministic=deterministic)

```



```

145
146     # Last step: Save account and actions memory
147     if i == max_steps - 1:
148         account_memory = test_env.env_method(
149             method_name="save_asset_memory"
150         )
151         actions_memory = test_env.env_method(
152             method_name="save_action_memory"
153         )
154
155     test_obs, _, dones, _ = test_env.step(action)
156
157     # If the environment is done, break the loop
158     if dones[0]:
159         break
160
161     return account_memory[0], actions_memory[0]
162
163 def save_model(
164     self,
165     model: BaseAlgorithm,
166     model_name: str,
167     directory: str,
168 ):
169     """
170     Saves the trained model to a specified directory.
171     :param model: The trained DRL model.
172     :param model_name: The name of the model.
173     :param directory: The directory where the model will be saved.
174     """
175     model_path = f"{directory}/{model_name}"
176     model.save(model_path)
177     print(f"Model saved to {model_path}")
178
179 def load_model(
180     self,
181     model_name: str,
182     directory: str,
183 ) -> BaseAlgorithm:
184     """
185     Loads a trained model from a specified directory.
186     :param model_name: The name of the model to load.
187     :param directory: The directory where the model is saved.
188     :return: The loaded DRL model.
189     :raises ValueError: If the model name is not supported.
190     """
191
192     if model_name not in config_models.MODELS:
193         raise ValueError(
194             f"Model {model_name} is not supported. Choose from
195             ↪ {config_models.MODELS.keys()}."
196         )
197
198     model_path = f"{directory}/{model_name}"

```

```

198     model = config_models.MODELS[model_name].load(model_path)
199
200     print(f"Model successfully loaded from {model_path}")
201
202     return model

```

Listing 8: tb_callback.py

```

1  from stable_baselines3.common.callbacks import BaseCallback
2
3
4  class TensorboardCallback(BaseCallback):
5      """
6      Custom callback for plotting additional values in tensorboard
7      """
8
9      def __init__(self, verbose: int = 0):
10         super().__init__(verbose)
11
12     def _on_step(self) -> bool:
13         try:
14             self.logger.record(
15                 key="train/reward", value=self.locals["rewards"][0]
16             )
17         except KeyError:
18             self.logger.record(
19                 key="train/reward", value=self.locals["reward"][0]
20             )
21         except Exception as e:
22             print(f"Error recording reward: {e}")
23         return True

```

G.4 Environments Module

Listing 9: env_portfolio_optimisation.py

```

1  from datetime import datetime
2  from typing import Dict, List, Literal, Optional, Tuple
3
4  import gymnasium as gym
5  import numpy as np
6  import pandas as pd
7  from gymnasium import spaces
8  from gymnasium.utils import seeding
9  from stable_baselines3.common.vec_env import DummyVecEnv
10 from stable_baselines3.common.vec_env.base_vec_env import VecEnvObs
11
12 from config import config
13 from pbenchmark.portfolio_benchmark import PortfolioBenchmark

```

```

14
15
16 class PortfolioOptimisationEnv(gym.Env):
17     def __init__(
18         self,
19         data: pd.DataFrame,
20         stock_dimension: int,
21         initial_amount: float,
22         reward_scaling: float,
23         state_space: int,
24         action_space: int,
25         state_columns: List[str],
26         normalisation_strategy: Literal["sum", "softmax"],
27         verbose: int = 10,
28         day: int = 0,
29         seed: Optional[int] = None,
30     ):
31         """
32         Initialise the portfolio optimisation environment.
33         :param data: DataFrame containing stock data.
34         :param stock_dimension: Number of stocks in the environment.
35         :param initial_amount: Initial cash available for portfolio allocation.
36         :param reward_scaling: Scaling factor for the reward.
37         :param state_space: Dimension of the state space.
38         :param action_space: Dimension of the action space.
39         :param state_columns: List of columns in the dataframe to represent the state
40         ↪ space.
41         :param normalisation_strategy: Strategy (softmax, sum) to normalise the actions
42         ↪ to sum to 1.
43         :param verbose: Verbosity level for logging.
44         :param day: Current day in the trading data.
45         :param seed: Random seed for reproducibility.
46         """
47         self.df = data
48         self.day = day
49         self.data = self.df.loc[self.day, :]
50         self.stock_dimension = stock_dimension
51         self.initial_amount = initial_amount
52         self.reward_scaling = reward_scaling
53         self.state_space = state_space
54         self.action_space = spaces.Box(low=0, high=1, shape=(action_space,))
55         self.observation_space = spaces.Box(
56             low=-np.inf,
57             high=np.inf,
58             shape=(
59                 self.state_space
60                 + (
61                     self.stock_dimension - 1
62                     if "covariance" in state_columns
63                     else 0
64                 ),
65                 self.stock_dimension,
66             ),
67         )

```

```

66     self.state_columns = state_columns
67     self.terminal = False
68     self.verbose = verbose
69     self.normalisation_strategy = normalisation_strategy
70
71     # Initialise state
72     self.state = self.__get_state()
73     self.portfolio_value = self.initial_amount
74     self.weights = [1 / self.stock_dimension] * self.stock_dimension
75
76     # Initialise reward
77     self.reward = 0.0
78
79     # Initialise counter variables
80     self.episode = 0
81
82     # Initialise memory variables
83     self.asset_memory = [self.initial_amount]
84     self.rewards_memory = [self.reward]
85     self.return_memory = [0]
86     self.actions_memory = [self.weights]
87     self.date_memory = [self.__get_date()]
88
89     # Initialise the benchmark
90     self.benchmark = PortfolioBenchmark()
91
92     # Set the random seed for reproducibility
93     self._seed(seed)
94
95     def __get_state(self) -> List:
96         """
97         Get the current state representation from the data.
98         :return: Current state as a list of values for each column in state_columns.
99         """
100         if "covariance" in self.state_columns:
101             covariance = np.array(
102                 self.data["covariance"]
103                 .apply(lambda x: np.array(eval(x))) # type: ignore
104                 .values.tolist()
105             )
106             return np.append(
107                 covariance,
108                 [
109                     self.data[col].values.tolist()
110                     for col in self.state_columns
111                     if col != "covariance"
112                 ],
113                 axis=0,
114             ).tolist()
115         else:
116             return [
117                 self.data[col].values.tolist() for col in self.state_columns
118             ]
119
120     def __get_date(self) -> datetime:

```

```

121     """
122     Get the current date from the data.
123     :return: Current date.
124     """
125
126     return self.data.date.unique()[0]
127
128 def step(self, action: np.ndarray) -> Tuple[List, float, bool, bool, Dict]:
129     """
130     Execute one time step within the environment.
131     :param action: List of actions to take for each stock.
132     :return: Tuple containing the next state, reward, done flag, truncated flag, and
133             ↪ additional info.
134     """
135
136     self.terminal = self.day >= len(self.df.index.unique()) - 1
137
138     if self.terminal:
139         df_return = self.save_asset_memory()
140
141         # Print information if verbose
142         if self.verbose and self.episode % self.verbose == 0:
143             print("=====")
144             print(f"day: {self.day}, episode: {self.episode}")
145             print(f"begin_total_asset: {self.asset_memory[0]:.2f}")
146             print(f"end_total_asset: {self.portfolio_value:.2f}")
147             sharpe = self.benchmark.compute_sharpe_ratio(df_return)
148             print(f"sharpe_ratio: {sharpe:.2f}")
149             print("=====")
150
151         else:
152             # Normalise actions
153             weights = self.__normalise_actions(
154                 action, self.normalisation_strategy # type: ignore
155             )
156             self.actions_memory.append(weights.tolist())
157
158             # Retrieve previous day's prices
159             prev_prices = np.array(self.data.close.values)
160
161             # Update the state with the new actions
162             self.day += 1
163             self.data = self.df.loc[self.day, :]
164             self.state = self.__get_state()
165
166             # Retrieve current day's prices
167             curr_prices = np.array(self.data.close.values)
168
169             # Compute the portfolio returns
170             portfolio_return = np.dot(
171                 ((curr_prices / prev_prices) - 1), weights
172             )
173
174             # Update portfolio value
175             new_portfolio_value = self.portfolio_value * (1 + portfolio_return)

```

```

174
175         # Update the reward: Change in portfolio value
176         self.reward = new_portfolio_value - self.portfolio_value
177         self.portfolio_value = new_portfolio_value
178         self.rewards_memory.append(self.reward)
179         self.reward *= self.reward_scaling
180
181         # Update the memory
182         self.return_memory.append(portfolio_return)
183         self.date_memory.append(self.__get_date())
184         self.asset_memory.append(new_portfolio_value)
185
186         # The fourth element in the tuple is always False for this environment
187         # Corresponds to whether the environment is truncated or not
188         return self.state, self.reward, self.terminal, False, {}
189
190     def reset(
191         self,
192         *,
193         seed=None,
194         options=None,
195     ) -> Tuple[List, Dict]:
196         """
197         Resets the environment and returns a new state representation.
198         :param seed: Random seed for reproducibility.
199         :param options: Options for resetting the environment.
200         :return: Tuple containing the initial state and an empty dictionary for
201                 ↪ additional info.
202         """
203         self.day = 0
204         self.data = self.df.loc[self.day, :]
205         self.state = self.__get_state()
206         self.portfolio_value = self.initial_amount
207
208         self.terminal = False
209
210         self.weights = [1 / self.stock_dimension] * self.stock_dimension
211         self.asset_memory = [self.initial_amount]
212         self.return_memory = [0]
213         self.rewards_memory = [0.0]
214         self.actions_memory = [self.weights]
215         self.date_memory = [self.__get_date()]
216
217         self.episode += 1
218
219         return self.state, {}
220
221     def render(self, mode: str = "human", close=False) -> List:
222         """
223         Render the current state of the environment.
224         :param mode: The rendering mode (default is "human").
225         :param close: Whether to close the rendering window (not used in this
226                 ↪ environment).
227         :return: Current state.

```

```

226         """
227         return self.state
228
229     def __normalise_actions(
230         self,
231         actions: np.ndarray,
232         strategy: Literal["sum", "softmax"],
233     ) -> np.ndarray:
234         """
235         Apply normalisation to the actions.
236         :param actions: Actions to be normalised.
237         :param strategy: Normalisation strategy to use.
238         :return: Normalised actions.
239         """
240         if strategy == "sum":
241             total_sum = np.sum(actions)
242             if total_sum != 0:
243                 return actions / total_sum
244             else:
245                 # Explicitly handle zero-sum case by returning uniform distribution
246                 return np.ones_like(actions) / len(actions)
247         else:
248             exp_actions = np.exp(actions)
249             return exp_actions / np.sum(exp_actions)
250
251     def save_asset_memory(self) -> pd.DataFrame:
252         """
253         Returns a DataFrame containing the asset memory.
254         :return: DataFrame with asset memory.
255         """
256         df_asset = pd.DataFrame(
257             {"date": self.date_memory, "account_value": self.asset_memory}
258         )
259
260         # Add daily return
261         df_asset["daily_return"] = (
262             df_asset["account_value"].pct_change().fillna(0)
263         )
264
265         # Add cumulative return
266         df_asset["cumulative_return"] = (
267             1 + df_asset["daily_return"]
268         ).cumprod() - 1
269
270         return df_asset
271
272     def save_action_memory(self) -> pd.DataFrame:
273         """
274         Returns a DataFrame containing the action memory.
275         :return: DataFrame with actions memory.
276         """
277         df_actions = pd.DataFrame(
278             self.actions_memory,
279             columns=self.data.tic.values,
280         )

```

```

281         df_actions["date"] = self.date_memory
282
283     return df_actions
284
285     def _seed(self, seed: Optional[int] = None) -> List[int]:
286         """
287         Set the random seed for the environment.
288         :param seed: Random seed for reproducibility.
289         :return: List containing the seed used.
290         """
291         self.np_random, seed = seeding.np_random(seed)
292         return [seed]
293
294     def get_sb_env(self) -> Tuple[DummyVecEnv, VecEnvObs]:
295         """
296         Get the stable-baselines environment.
297         :return: Stable-baselines environment and observation space.
298         """
299         e = DummyVecEnv([lambda: self])
300         obs = e.reset()
301         return e, obs
302
303
304 class PortfolioOptimisationEnvWrapper:
305     def __init__(
306         self,
307         train_data: pd.DataFrame,
308         trade_data: pd.DataFrame,
309         state_columns: List[str] = ["close"],
310         initial_amount: float = config.INITIAL_AMOUNT,
311         reward_scaling: float = 1e-1,
312         normalisation_strategy: Literal["sum", "softmax"] = "softmax",
313         verbose: int = 10,
314     ):
315         """
316         Initialises the trading environment.
317         :param train_data: DataFrame containing training data.
318         :param trade_data: DataFrame containing trading data.
319         :param state_columns: List of columns to represent the state space.
320         :param initial_amount: Initial cash available for trading.
321         :param reward_scaling: Scaling factor for the reward.
322         :param normalisation_strategy: Strategy (softmax, sum) to normalise the actions
323         ↪ to sum to 1.
324         :param verbose: Verbosity level for logging.
325         """
326         self.stock_dim = train_data.tic.nunique()
327         self.state_space = len(state_columns)
328         self.train_data = train_data
329         self.trade_data = trade_data
330
331         self.env_args = {
332             "initial_amount": initial_amount,
333             "state_space": self.state_space,
334             "stock_dimension": self.stock_dim,

```



```

334         "action_space": self.stock_dim,
335         "reward_scaling": reward_scaling,
336         "state_columns": state_columns,
337         "normalisation_strategy": normalisation_strategy,
338         "verbose": verbose,
339     }
340
341     if verbose:
342         print(
343             f"Environment successfully created with \n\tStock dimension:
344             ↪ {self.stock_dim} \n\tState space: {self.state_space}"
345         )
346
347     def get_train_env(self) -> DummyVecEnv:
348         """
349         Creates and returns the training environment.
350         :return: Training environment instance.
351         """
352         self.train_env = PortfolioOptimisationEnv(
353             data=self.train_data, **self.env_args
354         )
355         return self.train_env.get_sb_env()[0]
356
357     def get_trade_env(
358         self,
359     ) -> Tuple[PortfolioOptimisationEnv, Tuple[DummyVecEnv, VecEnvObs]]:
360         """
361         Creates and returns the trading environment.
362         :return: Trading environment instance and its stable-baselines environment.
363         """
364         self.trade_env = PortfolioOptimisationEnv(
365             data=self.trade_data, **self.env_args
366         )
367         return self.trade_env, self.trade_env.get_sb_env()

```

G.5 Benchmarking Module

Listing 10: portfolio_benchmark.py

```

1  from typing import Dict, Literal
2
3  import pandas as pd
4  from pyfolio import timeseries
5  from pypfopt import EfficientFrontier, expected_returns, risk_models
6
7  from config import config
8  from preprocessor.findata_downloader import FinancialDataDownloader
9
10
11 class PortfolioBenchmark:
12     def __init__(self) -> None:

```

```

13         """
14         Initialise the PortfolioBenchmark class.
15         """
16         pass
17
18     def convert_daily_return(
19         self,
20         df_account: pd.DataFrame,
21     ) -> pd.Series:
22
23         df_returns = df_account.copy()
24
25         df_returns["date"] = pd.to_datetime(df_returns["date"])
26         df_returns.set_index("date", drop=True, inplace=True)
27         df_returns.index = df_returns.index.tz_localize("UTC") # type: ignore
28         return pd.Series(
29             df_returns["daily_return"].values, index=df_returns.index
30         )
31
32     def set_data(
33         self,
34         train_data: pd.DataFrame,
35         trade_data: pd.DataFrame,
36         lookback: int = 252,
37     ) -> None:
38         """
39         Combine the training and testing data into a single DataFrame and
40         filter the data for the specified time period.
41         :param train_data: DataFrame containing training data.
42         :param trade_data: DataFrame containing trading data.
43         :param lookback: Lookback period in days for the test start date.
44         """
45         data = pd.concat([train_data, trade_data], ignore_index=True)
46
47         # Find the test start date or the next available trading date
48         test_start = pd.to_datetime(config.TEST_START_DATE)
49         if test_start not in data["date"].values:
50             print("Test start date is not a trading date in the dataset.")
51             next_date = test_start
52             for lookahead in range(1, 6):
53                 next_date = test_start + pd.Timedelta(days=lookahead)
54                 if next_date in data["date"].values:
55                     print(
56                         f"Using next available trading date: {next_date.date()}"
57                     )
58                     test_start = next_date
59                     break
60             else:
61                 raise ValueError(
62                     "No available trading date found after the test start date."
63                 )
64
65         data.set_index(data["date"].astype("category").cat.codes, inplace=True)
66
67         # Filter data for the test period plus lookback window

```

```

68     start_idx = (
69         data[data["date"] == test_start].index.unique().values[0] - lookback
70     )
71     end_idx = data.index.max()
72
73     self.data = data.loc[start_idx:end_idx, :]
74     self.lookback = lookback
75
76     def optimise_portfolio(
77         self,
78         strategy: Literal["mean", "min", "momentum", "equal"],
79         initial_amount: int = config.INITIAL_AMOUNT,
80     ) -> pd.DataFrame:
81         """
82         Optimises the portfolio depending on the specified strategy:
83         - 'mean': Mean-variance optimisation
84         - 'min': Minimum variance optimisation
85         - 'momentum': Momentum-based strategy
86         - 'equal': Equal weight strategy
87         :param strategy: Type of optimisation
88         :param initial_amount: Initial capital for the portfolio, default is 100000.
89         :return: DataFrame with date, account_value, and daily_return columns.
90         """
91         # Pivot data: date as index, tics as columns
92         price_df = self.data.pivot(
93             index="date", columns="tic", values="close"
94         ).sort_index()
95
96         # Calculate daily returns
97         returns_df = price_df.pct_change().dropna()
98
99         # Initialise memory
100         weights_record = {}
101         portfolio_returns = [0.0]
102         portfolio_values = [initial_amount]
103         portfolio_value = initial_amount
104
105         dates = returns_df.index
106
107         for i in range(self.lookback + 1, len(returns_df)):
108             current_date = dates[i]
109
110             window_prices = price_df.iloc[i - self.lookback : i + 1]
111
112             if strategy == "momentum":
113                 weights = self.__momentum_strategy(window_prices)
114             elif strategy == "equal":
115                 weights = self.__equal_weight_strategy(
116                     price_df.columns.tolist()
117                 )
118             elif strategy == "mean":
119                 weights = self.__mean_variance_strategy(window_prices)
120             elif strategy == "min":
121                 weights = self.__min_variance_strategy(window_prices)
122             else:

```

```

123         raise ValueError(
124             "Invalid strategy. Choose from 'mean', 'min', 'momentum', or
              ↳ 'equal'."
125         )
126
127     weights_record[current_date] = weights
128
129     # Calculate daily return of the portfolio
130     daily_return = sum(
131         weights.get(tic, 0) * returns_df.iloc[i][tic]
132         for tic in price_df.columns
133     )
134     portfolio_returns.append(daily_return)
135
136     # Calculate daily portfolio value
137     portfolio_value *= 1 + daily_return
138     portfolio_values.append(portfolio_value)
139
140     # Convert to pandas DataFrame with date column, account_value and daily_return
141     ↳ columns
142     portfolio = pd.DataFrame(
143         {
144             "date": dates[self.lookback :],
145             "account_value": portfolio_values,
146             "daily_return": portfolio_returns,
147         }
148     )
149
150     return portfolio
151
152 def __momentum_strategy(
153     self, prices: pd.DataFrame, lookback: int = 252
154 ) -> Dict:
155     """
156     Implements a simple momentum strategy.
157     :param prices: DataFrame of prices.
158     :return: Dictionary of weights based on momentum.
159     """
160
161     returns = prices.pct_change(lookback).iloc[-1]
162
163     # Clipping negative returns to zero
164     returns = returns.clip(lower=0)
165
166     # If all returns are zero, return equal weights
167     if returns.sum() == 0:
168         return {tic: 1 / len(prices.columns) for tic in prices.columns}
169     # Normalise weights to sum to 1
170     weights = returns / returns.sum()
171     return weights.to_dict()
172
173 def __equal_weight_strategy(self, ticker_list: list) -> Dict:
174     """
175     Implements an equal weight strategy.

```

```

175         :param ticker_list: List of asset tickers.
176         :return: Dictionary of equal weights for each asset.
177         """
178         num_assets = len(ticker_list)
179         return {tic: 1 / num_assets for tic in ticker_list}
180
181     def __mean_variance_strategy(self, prices: pd.DataFrame) -> Dict:
182         """
183         Implements a mean-variance optimisation strategy.
184         :param prices: DataFrame of prices.
185         :return: Dictionary of weights based on mean-variance optimisation.
186         """
187         mu = expected_returns.mean_historical_return(prices)
188         S = risk_models.sample_cov(prices)
189
190         ef = EfficientFrontier(mu, S)
191         _ = ef.max_sharpe()
192         return ef.clean_weights()
193
194     def __min_variance_strategy(self, prices: pd.DataFrame) -> Dict:
195         """
196         Implements a minimum variance optimisation strategy.
197         :param prices: DataFrame of prices.
198         :return: Dictionary of weights based on minimum variance optimisation.
199         """
200         mu = expected_returns.mean_historical_return(prices)
201         S = risk_models.sample_cov(prices)
202
203         ef = EfficientFrontier(mu, S)
204         _ = ef.min_volatility()
205         return ef.clean_weights()
206
207     def get_index_performance(
208         self, start_date: str, end_date: str, index_ticker: str
209     ):
210         findownloader = FinancialDataDownloader(start_date, end_date)
211         index_df = findownloader.download_data([index_ticker])
212         index_df = index_df[["date", "close"]].copy()
213
214         # Compute daily returns
215         index_df["daily_return"] = index_df["close"].pct_change().fillna(0)
216
217         # Compute the cumulative returns
218         index_df["cumulative_return"] = (
219             1 + index_df["daily_return"]
220         ).cumprod() - 1
221
222         # Compute the account value
223         index_df["account_value"] = (
224             1 + index_df["daily_return"]
225         ).cumprod() * config.INITIAL_AMOUNT
226         # Set the model name and drop price column
227         index_df["model"] = "Index"
228         index_df.drop(columns=["close"], inplace=True)
229

```

```

230         return index_df
231
232     def compute_perf_stats(self, df_account: pd.DataFrame) -> pd.Series:
233         """
234         Computes performance statistics for the portfolio using PyFolio.
235         :param df_account: DataFrame containing account values with 'date',
236         'account_value', and 'daily_return' columns.
237         :return: Series containing performance statistics.
238         """
239         pf_returns = self.convert_daily_return(df_account)
240         perf_stats_alg = timeseries.perf_stats(
241             returns=pf_returns,
242             factor_returns=pf_returns,
243             positions=None,
244             transactions=None,
245             turnover_denom="AGB",
246         )
247         return perf_stats_alg
248
249     def compute_sharpe_ratio(self, df_account: pd.DataFrame) -> float:
250         """
251         Computes the Sharpe ratio for the portfolio.
252         :param df_account: DataFrame containing account values with 'date',
253         'account_value', and 'daily_return' columns.
254         :return: The Sharpe ratio as a float.
255         """
256         perf_stats = self.compute_perf_stats(df_account)
257         return perf_stats.get("Sharpe ratio", 0)
258
259     def compute_cum_returns(self, df_account: pd.DataFrame) -> float:
260         """
261         Computes the cumulative returns for the portfolio.
262         :param df_account: DataFrame containing account values with 'date',
263         'account_value', and 'daily_return' columns.
264         :return: The cumulative returns as a float.
265         """
266         perf_stats = self.compute_perf_stats(df_account)
267         return perf_stats.get("Cumulative returns", 0)

```

G.6 Explainability Module

Listing 11: explainability.py

```

1 from typing import Tuple
2
3 import pandas as pd
4 from sklearn.ensemble import RandomForestRegressor
5
6 # https://scikit-learn.org/stable/modules/generated/sklearn.experimental.enable_halving_
6 ↪ _search_cv.html
7 from sklearn.experimental import enable_halving_search_cv

```

```

8 from sklearn.model_selection import HalvingGridSearchCV # type: ignore
9 from sklearn.model_selection import train_test_split
10
11
12 class Explainer:
13     """
14     Base class for explainers in the portfolio optimization environment.
15     This class provides methods to build state and action spaces, split data,
16     and build a proxy explanation model.
17     """
18
19     def __init__(self):
20         self.state_space = None
21         self.action_space = None
22
23     def build_state_space(
24         self, data: pd.DataFrame, columns: list
25     ) -> pd.DataFrame:
26         """
27         Build the state space dataframe from a given DataFrame.
28         :param data: DataFrame containing trade data with 'date' and 'tic' columns.
29         :param columns: List of columns to include in the state space.
30         :return: DataFrame representing the state space columns.
31         """
32         # Filter the trade data to include only the relevant columns
33         pivot_df = data.pivot(index="date", columns="tic", values=columns)
34         # Flatten the multi-index columns
35         pivot_df.columns = [
36             "_".join(col).strip() for col in pivot_df.columns.values
37         ]
38
39         state_space = pivot_df.reset_index()
40
41         # Drop the 'date' column
42         state_space.drop(columns=["date"], inplace=True)
43
44         return state_space
45
46     def build_action_space(self, data: pd.DataFrame) -> pd.DataFrame:
47         """
48         Build the action space dataframe from a given DataFrame.
49         :param data: DataFrame containing trade data with 'date' and 'tic' columns.
50         :return: DataFrame representing the action space columns.
51         """
52         # Filter the trade data to include only the relevant columns
53         action_space = data.drop(columns=["date"])
54
55         return action_space
56
57     def split_data(
58         self,
59         state_space: pd.DataFrame,
60         action_space: pd.DataFrame,
61         test_size: float = 0.2,
62     ) -> Tuple[pd.DataFrame, pd.DataFrame, pd.DataFrame, pd.DataFrame]:

```

```

63     """
64     Split the state and action space data into training and testing sets.
65     :param state_space: DataFrame representing the state space.
66     :param action_space: DataFrame representing the action space.
67     :param test_size: Proportion of the dataset to include in the test split.
68     :return: Tuple containing training and testing sets for state and action spaces.
69     """
70     X_train, X_test, y_train, y_test = train_test_split(
71         state_space, action_space, test_size=test_size, shuffle=False
72     )
73     return X_train, X_test, y_train, y_test
74
75 def build_proxy_explanation_model(
76     self,
77     X_train: pd.DataFrame,
78     y_train: pd.DataFrame,
79     find_best_params: bool = True,
80 ) -> RandomForestRegressor:
81     """
82     Build and train a RandomForestRegressor model to explain the actions
83     taken by the agent based on the state space.
84     :param X_train: DataFrame containing the training state space data.
85     :param y_train: DataFrame containing the training action space data.
86     :param find_best_params: Whether to perform hyperparameter tuning.
87     :return: The trained RandomForestRegressor model.
88     """
89
90     if find_best_params:
91
92         param_grid = {
93             "n_estimators": [100, 200, 300],
94             "max_depth": [10, 20, 30],
95             "min_samples_split": [2, 5, 10],
96             "min_samples_leaf": [1, 2, 4],
97         }
98
99         grid_search = HalvingGridSearchCV(
100             estimator=RandomForestRegressor(),
101             param_grid=param_grid,
102             cv=3,
103         ).fit(X_train, y_train)
104         print("Best parameters found: ", grid_search.best_params_)
105         print(f"Best score: {grid_search.best_score_:.4f}")
106
107         best_model = grid_search.best_estimator_
108     else:
109         best_model = RandomForestRegressor(
110             n_estimators=200,
111             max_depth=10,
112             min_samples_split=5,
113             min_samples_leaf=4,
114         )
115         best_model.fit(X_train, y_train)
116

```



```
117         return best_model
```

Listing 12: feature_importance.py

```
1  from typing import List, Literal
2
3  import matplotlib.pyplot as plt
4  import pandas as pd
5  import seaborn as sns
6  from sklearn.ensemble import RandomForestRegressor
7
8
9  class FeatureImportance:
10     def __init__(
11         self,
12         model: RandomForestRegressor,
13         columns: List[str],
14         directory: str,
15         model_name: str,
16     ):
17         """
18         Initialize the FeatureImportance class.
19         :param model: Trained Random Forest model.
20         :param columns: List of feature names.
21         :param directory: Directory where plots will be saved.
22         :param model_name: Name of the DRL model to which the feature importances belong
23         ↪ to.
24         """
25         self.model = model
26         self.columns = columns
27         self.directory = directory
28         self.model_name = model_name
29
30     def get_feature_importances(self) -> pd.DataFrame:
31         """
32         Calculate feature importances from the trained model.
33         :return: DataFrame containing feature names and their importances.
34         """
35         importances = self.model.feature_importances_
36         feature_importances = pd.DataFrame(
37             {
38                 "feature": self.columns,
39                 "importance": importances,
40             }
41         ).sort_values(by="importance", ascending=False)
42
43         feature_importances.reset_index(drop=True, inplace=True)
44         feature_importances["ticker"] = feature_importances["feature"].apply(
45             lambda x: x.split("_")[-1] if "_" in x else ""
46         )
47         feature_importances["indicator"] = (
48             feature_importances["feature"]
```

```

48         .apply(lambda x: x.split("_")[:-1] if "_" in x else x)
49         .apply(lambda x: "_" .join(x) if len(x) > 1 else x[0])
50     )
51     self.feature_importances = feature_importances
52
53     return feature_importances
54
55     def plot_feature_importances(
56         self,
57         max_features: int = 20,
58     ) -> None:
59         """
60         Plot the feature importances
61         :param max_features: Maximum number of features to display. Defaults to 20.
62         :return: None
63         """
64         plt.figure(figsize=(10, 6))
65         sns.barplot(
66             data=self.feature_importances[:max_features],
67             y="feature",
68             x="importance",
69             orient="h",
70         )
71         plt.title("Feature importances")
72         plt.xlabel("Importance")
73         plt.ylabel("Feature")
74         plt.tight_layout()
75         plt.savefig(
76             f"{self.directory}/{self.model_name}_feature_importance.png"
77         )
78         plt.show()
79
80     def plot_feature_importances_by_ticker(
81         self,
82         max_features: int = 20,
83     ) -> None:
84         """
85         Plot the feature importances by ticker.
86         :return: None
87         """
88         plt.figure(figsize=(10, 6))
89         sns.barplot(
90             data=self.feature_importances[:max_features],
91             y="feature",
92             x="importance",
93             orient="h",
94             hue="ticker",
95         )
96         plt.title("Feature importances by Ticker")
97         plt.xlabel("Importance")
98         plt.ylabel("Feature")
99         plt.legend(title="Ticker")
100         plt.tight_layout()
101         plt.savefig(
102             f"{self.directory}/{self.model_name}_feature_importance_by_ticker.png"

```

```

103         )
104         plt.show()
105
106     def add_comparison(
107         self,
108         statistic: Literal["mean", "median", "q1", "q3"] = "mean",
109     ) -> pd.DataFrame:
110         """
111         Add a column to the feature importances DataFrame indicating whether
112         the importance is above or below the provided statistical function.
113         :param statistic: Statistical function to compare against (e.g., mean, median,
114         ↪ q1, q3).
115         :return: Updated DataFrame with a new column indicating comparison.
116         """
117         if statistic == "mean":
118             threshold = self.feature_importances["importance"].mean()
119         elif statistic == "median":
120             threshold = self.feature_importances["importance"].median()
121         elif statistic == "q1":
122             threshold = self.feature_importances["importance"].quantile(0.25)
123         elif statistic == "q3":
124             threshold = self.feature_importances["importance"].quantile(0.75)
125         else:
126             raise ValueError(
127                 "Invalid statistic. Use 'mean', 'median', 'q1', or 'q3'."
128             )
129
130         self.feature_importances[statistic] = self.feature_importances[
131             "importance"
132         ].apply(
133             lambda x: (
134                 f"Above {statistic}" if x > threshold else f"Below {statistic}"
135             )
136         )
137
138         return self.feature_importances
139
140     def plot_feature_importance_comparison(
141         self,
142         max_features: int = 20,
143         statistic: Literal["mean", "median", "q1", "q3"] = "mean",
144     ) -> None:
145         """
146         Plot the feature importances with comparison to a statistical threshold.
147         :param max_features: Maximum number of features to display. Defaults to 20.
148         :param statistic: Statistical function to compare against (e.g., mean, median,
149         ↪ q1, q3).
150         :return: None
151         """
152         feature_importances = self.add_comparison(statistic)
153
154         plt.figure(figsize=(10, 6))
155         sns.barplot(
156             data=feature_importances[:max_features],

```

```

155         y="feature",
156         x="importance",
157         orient="h",
158         hue=statistic,
159     )
160     plt.title(f"Feature importances with {statistic} comparison")
161     plt.xlabel("Importance")
162     plt.ylabel("Feature")
163     plt.legend(title="")
164     plt.tight_layout()
165     plt.savefig(
166         f"{self.directory}/{self.model_name}_feature_importance_{statistic}_compari_
        ↪ son.png"
167     )
168     plt.show()
169
170     def plot_feature_importance_by_indicator(
171         self,
172         max_features: int = 20,
173     ) -> None:
174         """
175         Plot the feature importances by indicator.
176         :param max_features: Maximum number of features to display. Defaults to 20.
177         :return: None
178         """
179         plt.figure(figsize=(10, 6))
180         sns.barplot(
181             data=self.feature_importances[:max_features],
182             y="feature",
183             x="importance",
184             orient="h",
185             hue="indicator",
186         )
187         plt.title("Feature importances by Indicator")
188         plt.xlabel("Importance")
189         plt.ylabel("Feature")
190         plt.legend(title="Indicator")
191         plt.tight_layout()
192         plt.savefig(
193             f"{self.directory}/{self.model_name}_feature_importance_by_indicator.png"
194         )
195         plt.show()
196
197     def plot_top_features_per_ticker(
198         self,
199         top_features: int = 5,
200     ) -> None:
201         """
202         Plot the top features per ticker.
203         :param directory: Directory where the plot will be saved.
204         :param filename: Base filename for the saved plot.
205         :param top_features: Number of top features to display per ticker. Defaults to 5
206         :return: None
207         """

```

```

208
209     # Group by ticker and get the top features by importance
210     grouped_features = (
211         self.feature_importances.groupby("ticker")[
212             "ticker", "feature", "importance"
213         ]
214         .apply(lambda x: x.nlargest(top_features, "importance"))
215         .reset_index(drop=True)
216     )
217
218     plt.figure(figsize=(10, 6))
219     sns.barplot(
220         data=grouped_features,
221         x="importance",
222         y="feature",
223         hue="ticker",
224     )
225     plt.title("Top features per Ticker")
226     plt.xlabel("Importance")
227     plt.ylabel("Feature")
228     plt.legend(title="Ticker")
229     plt.tight_layout()
230     plt.savefig(
231         f"{self.directory}/{self.model_name}_top_features_per_ticker.png"
232     )
233     plt.show()
234
235     def plot_top_features_per_indicator(
236         self,
237         top_features: int = 5,
238     ) -> None:
239         """
240         Plot the top features per indicator.
241         :param top_features: Number of top features to display per indicator. Defaults
242         ↪ to 5
243         :return: None
244         """
245
246         # Select the top indicators based on their total importance
247         top_indicators = (
248             self.feature_importances.groupby("indicator")["importance"]
249             .sum()
250             .nlargest(top_features)
251             .index
252         )
253
254         # Filter the feature importances to include only the top indicators
255         filtered_features = self.feature_importances[
256             self.feature_importances["indicator"].isin(top_indicators)
257         ].copy()
258
259         # Sort values by indicator column given the order of top_indicators
260         filtered_features["indicator"] = pd.Categorical(
261             filtered_features["indicator"],

```

```

261         categories=top_indicators,
262         ordered=True,
263     )
264
265     # Sort the filtered features by indicator and importance
266     filtered_features = filtered_features.sort_values(
267         by=["indicator", "importance"], ascending=[True, False]
268     )
269
270     plt.figure(figsize=(10, 6))
271     sns.barplot(
272         data=filtered_features,
273         x="importance",
274         y="feature",
275         hue="indicator",
276     )
277     plt.title("Top features per Indicator")
278     plt.xlabel("Importance")
279     plt.ylabel("Feature")
280     plt.legend(title="Indicator")
281     plt.tight_layout()
282     plt.savefig(
283         f"{self.directory}/{self.model_name}_top_features_per_indicator.png"
284     )
285     plt.show()
286
287     def plot_mean_importance_by_ticker(
288         self,
289     ) -> None:
290         """
291         Plot the mean feature importances by ticker.
292         :return: None
293         """
294         mean_importances = (
295             self.feature_importances.groupby("ticker")["importance"]
296             .mean()
297             .reset_index()
298             .sort_values(by="importance", ascending=False)
299         )
300
301         plt.figure(figsize=(8, 4))
302         sns.barplot(
303             data=mean_importances,
304             x="importance",
305             y="ticker",
306             orient="h",
307             hue="ticker",
308         )
309         plt.title("Mean Feature Importances by Ticker")
310         plt.xlabel("Mean Importance")
311         plt.ylabel("Ticker")
312         plt.tight_layout()
313         plt.savefig(
314             f"{self.directory}/{self.model_name}_mean_importance_by_ticker.png"
315         )

```

```

316         plt.show()
317
318     def plot_mean_importance_by_indicator(
319         self,
320     ) -> None:
321         """
322         Plot the mean feature importances by indicator.
323         :return: None
324         """
325         mean_importances = (
326             self.feature_importances.groupby("indicator")["importance"]
327             .mean()
328             .reset_index()
329             .sort_values(by="importance", ascending=False)
330         )
331
332         plt.figure(figsize=(8, 4))
333         sns.barplot(
334             data=mean_importances,
335             x="importance",
336             y="indicator",
337             orient="h",
338             hue="indicator",
339         )
340         plt.title("Mean Feature Importances by Indicator")
341         plt.xlabel("Mean Importance")
342         plt.ylabel("Indicator")
343         plt.tight_layout()
344         plt.savefig(
345             f"{self.directory}/{self.model_name}_mean_importance_by_indicator.png"
346         )
347         plt.show()

```

Listing 13: lime_explainability.py

```

1  from typing import Callable, List
2
3  import pandas as pd
4  from lime.lime_tabular import LimeTabularExplainer
5
6
7  class LimeExplainer:
8      def __init__(self, directory: str, model_name: str) -> None:
9          """
10             Initialize the LimeExplainer with a directory to save explanation plots.
11             :param directory: Directory where plots will be saved.
12             :param model_name: Name of the DRL model to which the feature importances belong
13             ↪ to.
14             """
15             self.directory = directory
16             self.model_name = model_name

```

```

17     def build_lime_explainer(
18         self,
19         X_train: pd.DataFrame,
20     ) -> LimeTabularExplainer:
21         """
22         Build a LIME explainer for the given training data.
23         :param X_train: DataFrame containing the training data.
24         :return: LIME explainer object.
25         """
26         explainer = LimeTabularExplainer(
27             X_train.values, mode="regression", feature_names=X_train.columns
28         )
29         self.explainer = explainer
30         return explainer
31
32     def explain_instance(
33         self,
34         instance: pd.Series,
35         predict_fn: Callable,
36     ) -> List:
37         """
38         Explain a single instance using the LIME explainer.
39         Output the explanation in a notebook and return it as a list.
40         :param instance: Series representing the instance to explain.
41         :param predict_fn: Function to predict actions based on states.
42         :return: List containing the explanation.
43         """
44         explanation = self.explainer.explain_instance(
45             instance.values, predict_fn
46         )
47         explanation.show_in_notebook(show_table=True, show_all=False)
48         return explanation.as_list()
49
50     def explain_portfolio(
51         self,
52         instance: pd.Series,
53         columns: List[str],
54         predict_fn: Callable,
55         filename: str,
56     ) -> None:
57         """
58         Explain the portfolio using the LIME explainer and save the explanations as HTML
59         ↪ files.
60         :param explainer: LIME explainer object.
61         :param instance: Series representing the instance to explain.
62         :param columns: List of asset names to explain.
63         :param predict_fn: Function to predict actions based on states.
64         :param filename: Base filename for the HTML files.
65         """
66         # Explain each output separately
67         for index, column in enumerate(columns):
68             print(f"Explaining output for asset: {column}")
69
70             # Define a predict function for the specific asset

```



```

70         def predict(x):
71             return predict_fn(x[:, index])
72
73         # Explain the instance for the specific output
74         exp = self.explainer.explain_instance(
75             instance.values, predict, num_features=10
76         )
77
78         # Save the explanation as HTML
79         html = exp.as_html()
80         with open(
81             f"{self.directory}/{self.model_name}_{filename}_lime_single_obs_{column}_",
82             "w",
83         ) as f:
84             f.write(html)
85
86         exp.show_in_notebook(show_table=True)

```

Listing 14: shap_explainability.py

```

1  from typing import Callable
2
3  import numpy as np
4  import pandas as pd
5  import shap
6  from sklearn.ensemble import RandomForestRegressor
7
8
9  class ShapExplainer:
10     def __init__(self):
11         """
12         Initialize the SHAP explainer for the portfolio optimization environment.
13         """
14         pass
15
16     def build_proxy_explainer(
17         self, model: RandomForestRegressor
18     ) -> shap.TreeExplainer:
19         """
20         Build a proxy SHAP explainer for the given model and training data.
21         :param model: The trained RandomForestRegressor model.
22         :param X_train: DataFrame containing the training data.
23         :return: SHAP explainer object.
24         """
25         explainer = shap.TreeExplainer(model)
26         return explainer
27
28     def build_kernel_explainer(
29         self, predict_fn: Callable, X_train: pd.DataFrame
30     ) -> shap.KernelExplainer:
31         """

```

```

32         Build a Kernel SHAP explainer for the given prediction function and training
33         ↪ data.
34         :param predict_fn: Function to predict actions based on states.
35         :param X_train: DataFrame containing the training data.
36         :return: SHAP KernelExplainer object.
37         """
38         explainer = shap.KernelExplainer(predict_fn, X_train)
39         return explainer
40
41     def compute_shap_values(
42         self, explainer: shap.Explainer, X_test: pd.DataFrame
43     ) -> shap.Explanation:
44         """
45         Compute SHAP values for the test data using the given explainer.
46         :param explainer: SHAP explainer object.
47         :param X_test: DataFrame containing the test data.
48         :return: SHAP explanation object containing the SHAP values.
49         """
50         shap_values = explainer(X_test)
51         return shap_values
52
53     def compute_shap_interaction_values(
54         self, explainer: shap.Explainer, X_test: pd.DataFrame
55     ) -> np.ndarray:
56         """
57         Compute SHAP interaction values for the test data using the given explainer.
58         :param explainer: SHAP explainer object.
59         :param X_test: DataFrame containing the test data.
60         :return: SHAP explanation object containing the SHAP interaction values.
61         """
62         shap_interaction_values = explainer.shap_interaction_values(X_test) # type:
63         ↪ ignore
64         return shap_interaction_values

```

G.7 Visualisation Module

Listing 15: `__init__.py`

```

1 import os
2
3 import matplotlib.pyplot as plt
4
5 # Use custom matplotlib style
6 style = os.path.dirname(os.path.abspath(__file__)) + "/style.mplstyle"
7 plt.style.use(style)

```

Listing 16: `benchmark_visualiser.py`

```

1 import matplotlib.pyplot as plt

```

```

2 import pandas as pd
3 import seaborn as sns
4
5
6 class BenchmarkVisualiser:
7     def __init__(
8         self,
9         directory: str,
10    ):
11        """
12        Initializes the BenchmarkVisualiser with a directory to save plots.
13        :param directory: Directory where the plots will be saved.
14        """
15        self.directory = directory
16
17    def compare_account_value(
18        self,
19        data: pd.DataFrame,
20    ) -> None:
21        """
22        Visualises the account value over time for different models.
23        :param data: DataFrame containing account values with 'date', 'model', and
24        ↪ 'account_value' columns.
25        """
26        plt.figure(figsize=(12, 6))
27        sns.lineplot(data=data, x="date", y="account_value", hue="model")
28        plt.title("Portfolio Value over Trading Period")
29        plt.xlabel("Date")
30        plt.ylabel("Account Value")
31        plt.legend(title="Models")
32        plt.tight_layout()
33        plt.savefig(f"{self.directory}/account_value.png")
34        plt.show()
35
36    def compare_daily_returns(self, data: pd.DataFrame) -> None:
37        """
38        Visualises the daily returns over time for different models.
39        :param data: DataFrame containing returns with 'date', 'model', and
40        ↪ 'daily_return' columns.
41        """
42        plt.figure(figsize=(12, 6))
43        sns.lineplot(data=data, x="date", y="daily_return", hue="model")
44        plt.title("Daily Returns over Trading Period")
45        plt.xlabel("Date")
46        plt.ylabel("Daily Returns")
47        plt.legend(title="Models")
48        plt.tight_layout()
49        plt.savefig(f"{self.directory}/daily_returns.png")
50        plt.show()
51
52    def compare_cum_returns(self, data: pd.DataFrame) -> None:
53        """
54        Visualises the cumulative returns over time for different models.
55        :param data: DataFrame containing returns with 'date', 'model', and
56        ↪ 'cumulative_return' columns.

```

```

54     """
55     plt.figure(figsize=(12, 6))
56     sns.lineplot(data=data, x="date", y="cumulative_return", hue="model")
57     plt.title("Cumulative Returns over Trading Period")
58     plt.xlabel("Date")
59     plt.ylabel("Cumulative Returns")
60     plt.legend(title="Models")
61     plt.tight_layout()
62     plt.savefig(f"{self.directory}/cumulative_returns.png")
63     plt.show()

```

Listing 17: findata_visualiser.py

```

1  from typing import Optional
2
3  import matplotlib.pyplot as plt
4  import pandas as pd
5  import seaborn as sns
6
7
8  class FinancialDataVisualiser:
9      def __init__(self, directory: str) -> None:
10         """
11         Initialise the FinancialDataVisualiser.
12         """
13         self.directory = directory
14
15     def plot_close_prices(
16         self, data: pd.DataFrame, filename: Optional[str] = "close_prices"
17     ) -> None:
18         """
19         Plot closing prices of tickers in the data.
20         :param data: DataFrame containing financial data with 'date', 'tic', and 'close'
21         ↪ columns.
22         """
23         # Sample the first 10 tickers if there are more than 10 unique tickers
24         if data["tic"].nunique() > 10:
25             sample_tickers = data["tic"].unique()[:10]
26             data = data[data["tic"].isin(sample_tickers)].copy()
27
28         # Sort the data by 'tic' to ensure consistent plotting
29         data.sort_values(by="tic", inplace=True)
30
31         plt.figure(figsize=(12, 5))
32         sns.lineplot(data=data, x="date", y="close", hue="tic")
33         plt.title("Closing Prices of Tickers")
34         plt.xlabel("Date")
35         plt.ylabel("Closing Price")
36         plt.legend(title="Tickers")
37         plt.tight_layout()
38         plt.savefig(f"{self.directory}/{filename}.png")
39         plt.show()

```

```

39
40 def plot_technical_indicators(
41     self,
42     data: pd.DataFrame,
43     indicators: dict[str, str],
44 ) -> None:
45     """
46     Plot technical indicators for each ticker in the data.
47     :param data: DataFrame containing financial data with 'date', 'tic', and
48     ↪ technical indicators.
49     :param indicators: Dictionary mapping technical indicator names to their
50     ↪ descriptions.
51     """
52
53     # Sample the first 10 tickers if there are more than 10 unique tickers
54     if data["tic"].nunique() > 10:
55         sample_tickers = data["tic"].unique()[:10]
56         data = data[data["tic"].isin(sample_tickers)].copy()
57
58     # Sort the data by 'tic' to ensure consistent plotting
59     data.sort_values(by="tic", inplace=True)
60
61     # Sample the first 5 indicators if there are more than 5 unique indicators
62     ind_size = n if (n := len(indicators)) < 5 else 5
63
64     if ind_size == 1:
65         plt.figure(figsize=(12, 5))
66         indicator, name = list(indicators.items())[0]
67         if indicator in data.columns:
68             sns.lineplot(data=data, x="date", y=indicator, hue="tic")
69             plt.title(name)
70             plt.xlabel("Date")
71             plt.ylabel(indicator)
72             plt.legend(title="Tickers")
73             plt.savefig(f"{self.directory}/technical_indicators.png")
74             plt.show()
75         else:
76             print(f"Technical indicator '{indicator}' not found in data.")
77     else:
78         _, ax = plt.subplots(
79             ind_size, 1, figsize=(12, 5 * ind_size), sharex=True
80         )
81
82         # Iterate over indicators to ind_size
83         for i, (indicator, name) in enumerate(
84             list(indicators.items())[:ind_size]
85         ):
86             if indicator in data.columns:
87                 sns.lineplot(
88                     data=data, x="date", y=indicator, hue="tic", ax=ax[i]
89                 )
90                 ax[i].set_title(name)
91                 ax[i].set_xlabel("Date")
92                 ax[i].set_ylabel(indicator)

```

```

91         ax[i].tick_params(labelbottom=True)
92         ax[i].legend(title="Tickers")
93     else:
94         print(
95             f"Technical indicator '{indicator}' not found in data."
96         )
97
98     plt.tight_layout()
99     plt.savefig(f"{self.directory}/technical_indicators.png")
100     plt.show()
101
102     def plot_macroeconomic_indicators(
103         self,
104         data: pd.DataFrame,
105         indicators: dict[str, str],
106     ) -> None:
107         """
108         Plot macroeconomic indicators.
109         :param data: DataFrame containing financial data with 'date' and macroeconomic
110         ↪ indicators.
111         :param indicators: Dictionary mapping macroeconomic indicator names to their
112         ↪ descriptions.
113         """
114
115         # Sample the first 10 tickers if there are more than 10 unique tickers
116         if data["tic"].nunique() > 10:
117             sample_tickers = data["tic"].unique()[:10]
118             data = data[data["tic"].isin(sample_tickers)].copy()
119
120         # Sort the data by 'tic' to ensure consistent plotting
121         data.sort_values(by="tic", inplace=True)
122
123         # Sample the first 5 indicators if there are more than 5 unique indicators
124         ind_size = n if (n := len(indicators)) < 5 else 5
125
126         if ind_size == 1:
127             plt.figure(figsize=(12, 5))
128             indicator, name = list(indicators.items())[0]
129             # Convert indicator to alphanumeric
130             indicator = "".join(
131                 ch
132                 for ch in indicator.split(".", 1)[0].lower()
133                 if ch.isalnum() or ch == "_"
134             )
135             if indicator in data.columns:
136                 # Take the date and the indicator column
137                 ind_df = data[["date", indicator]]
138                 # Remove duplicate dates
139                 ind_df = ind_df.drop_duplicates(subset="date")
140                 sns.lineplot(data=ind_df, x="date", y=indicator)
141                 plt.title(name)
142                 plt.xlabel("Date")
143                 plt.ylabel(indicator)
144                 plt.savefig(f"{self.directory}/macroeconomic_indicators.png")

```

```

143         plt.show()
144     else:
145         print(
146             f"Macroeconomic indicator '{indicator}' not found in data."
147         )
148 else:
149     _, ax = plt.subplots(
150         ind_size, 1, figsize=(12, 5 * ind_size), sharex=True
151     )
152
153     colors = sns.color_palette().as_hex()[
154         :ind_size
155     ] # Use distinct colors
156
157     # Iterate over indicators to ind_size
158     for i, (indicator, name) in enumerate(
159         list(indicators.items())[:ind_size]
160     ):
161         # Convert indicator to alphanumeric
162         indicator = "".join(
163             ch
164             for ch in indicator.split(".", 1)[0].lower()
165             if ch.isalnum() or ch == "_"
166         )
167         if indicator in data.columns:
168             # Take the date and the indicator column
169             ind_df = data[["date", indicator]]
170             # Remove duplicate dates
171             ind_df = ind_df.drop_duplicates(subset="date")
172             sns.lineplot(
173                 data=ind_df,
174                 x="date",
175                 y=indicator,
176                 ax=ax[i],
177                 color=colors[i],
178             )
179             ax[i].set_title(name)
180             ax[i].set_xlabel("Date")
181             ax[i].set_ylabel(indicator)
182             ax[i].tick_params(labelbottom=True)
183         else:
184             print(
185                 f"Macroeconomic indicator '{indicator}' not found in data."
186             )
187
188     plt.tight_layout()
189     plt.savefig(f"{self.directory}/macroeconomic_indicators.png")
190     plt.show()
191
192 def plot_train_test_close_prices(
193     self,
194     train_data: pd.DataFrame,
195     test_data: pd.DataFrame,
196 ) -> None:
197     """

```

```

2198     Plot closing prices for train and test datasets.
2199     :param train_data: DataFrame containing training data with 'date', 'tic', and
2200     ↪ 'close' columns.
2201     :param test_data: DataFrame containing testing data with 'date', 'tic', and
2202     ↪ 'close' columns.
2203     :param directory: Directory where the plot will be saved.
2204     :param filename: Name of the file to save the plot (without extension).
2205     """
2206
2207     # Sample the first 10 tickers if there are more than 10 unique tickers
2208     if train_data["tic"].nunique() > 10:
2209         sample_tickers = train_data["tic"].unique()[:10]
2210         train_data = train_data[
2211             train_data["tic"].isin(sample_tickers)
2212         ].copy()
2213         test_data = test_data[test_data["tic"].isin(sample_tickers)].copy()
2214
2215     # Sort the data by 'tic' to ensure consistent plotting
2216     train_data.sort_values(by="tic", inplace=True)
2217     test_data.sort_values(by="tic", inplace=True)
2218
2219     _, ax = plt.subplots(2, 1, figsize=(12, 10), sharex=True, sharey=True)
2220
2221     sns.lineplot(data=train_data, x="date", y="close", hue="tic", ax=ax[0])
2222     ax[0].set_title("Train data set")
2223     ax[0].set_xlabel("Date")
2224     ax[0].set_ylabel("Closing Price")
2225     ax[0].tick_params(labelbottom=True)
2226     ax[0].legend(title="Tickers")
2227
2228     sns.lineplot(data=test_data, x="date", y="close", hue="tic", ax=ax[1])
2229     ax[1].set_title("Test data set")
2230     ax[1].set_xlabel("Date")
2231     ax[1].set_ylabel("Closing Price")
2232     ax[1].legend(title="Tickers")
2233
2234     plt.suptitle("Train and Test Closing Prices of Tickers")
2235     plt.tight_layout()
2236     plt.savefig(f"{self.directory}/train_test_close_prices.png")
2237     plt.show()
2238
2239     def plot_train_val_test_close_prices(
2240         self,
2241         train_data: pd.DataFrame,
2242         val_data: pd.DataFrame,
2243         test_data: pd.DataFrame,
2244     ) -> None:
2245         """
2246         Plot closing prices for train, validation, and test datasets.
2247         :param train_data: DataFrame containing training data with 'date', 'tic', and
2248         ↪ 'close' columns.
2249         :param val_data: DataFrame containing validation data with 'date', 'tic', and
2250         ↪ 'close' columns.
2251         :param test_data: DataFrame containing testing data with 'date', 'tic', and
2252         ↪ 'close' columns.

```



```

248     """
249
250     # Concatenate dataframes
251     data = pd.concat([train_data, val_data, test_data])
252
253     if data.tic.nunique() > 10:
254         sample_tickers = data["tic"].unique()[:10]
255         data = data[data["tic"].isin(sample_tickers)].copy()
256
257     # Sort the data by 'tic' to ensure consistent plotting
258     data.sort_values(by="tic", inplace=True)
259
260     plt.figure(figsize=(12, 5))
261     sns.lineplot(data=data, x="date", y="close", hue="tic")
262
263     # Add vertical lines to indicate the split points
264     plt.axvline(
265         x=val_data["date"].min(),
266         color="black",
267         linestyle="--",
268     )
269     plt.axvline(x=test_data["date"].min(), color="black", linestyle="--")
270
271     # Add labels for the split points
272     plt.text(
273         val_data["date"].min() + pd.Timedelta(days=20),
274         data["close"].max(),
275         "Validation Start",
276         horizontalalignment="left",
277         verticalalignment="bottom",
278         color="black",
279     )
280     plt.text(
281         test_data["date"].min() + pd.Timedelta(days=20),
282         data["close"].max(),
283         "Test Start",
284         horizontalalignment="left",
285         verticalalignment="bottom",
286         color="black",
287     )
288
289     plt.title("Train, Validation, and Test Closing Prices of Tickers")
290     plt.xlabel("Date")
291     plt.ylabel("Closing Price")
292     plt.legend(title="Tickers")
293     plt.tight_layout()
294     plt.savefig(f"{self.directory}/train_val_test_close_prices.png")
295     plt.show()

```

Listing 18: model_visualiser.py

```

1 from typing import List
2

```

```

3 import matplotlib.pyplot as plt
4 import pandas as pd
5 import seaborn as sns
6
7
8 class ModelVisualiser:
9     def __init__(
10         self,
11         directory: str,
12     ):
13         """
14         Initializes the ModelVisualiser with a directory to save plots.
15         :param directory: Directory where the plots will be saved.
16         """
17         self.directory = directory
18
19     def evaluate_training(
20         self,
21         model_name: str,
22         x: str,
23         y: List[str],
24         title: List[str],
25         logs_dir: str,
26     ) -> None:
27         """
28         Visualises the training progress of an agent by plotting specified variables
29         ↪ against a common
30         x-axis variable.
31         :param model_name: Name of the model being evaluated (e.g., 'a2c').
32         :param x: The name of the x-axis variable (e.g., 'step').
33         :param y: List of variable names to be plotted on the y-axis.
34         :param title: List of titles for each subplot corresponding to the y variables.
35         :param logs_dir: Directory where the training logs are stored.
36         """
37         num_variables = len(y)
38         _, ax = plt.subplots(
39             num_variables, 1, figsize=(12, 5 * num_variables), sharex=True
40         )
41
42         data = pd.read_csv(f"{logs_dir}/{model_name}/progress.csv")
43
44         colors = sns.color_palette("husl", num_variables)
45
46         # Iterate over the variables to plot
47         for i, variable in enumerate(y):
48             if variable in data.columns:
49                 sns.lineplot(
50                     data=data, x=x, y=variable, ax=ax[i], color=colors[i]
51                 )
52                 ax[i].set_title(title[i])
53                 ax[i].set_xlabel(x.split("/")[-1].capitalize())
54                 ax[i].set_ylabel(
55                     " ".join(variable.split("/")[-1].split("_")).capitalize()

```

```

56         )
57         ax[i].tick_params(labelbottom=True)
58
59     plt.suptitle(f"Training Progress of {model_name.upper()} Agent", y=1)
60     plt.tight_layout()
61     plt.savefig(f"{self.directory}/{model_name}_train_evaluation.png")
62     plt.show()
63
64     def evaluate_testing(
65         self,
66         model_name: str,
67         account_data: pd.DataFrame,
68         actions_data: pd.DataFrame,
69     ) -> None:
70         """
71         Visualises the testing results of an agent by plotting account value and actions
72         ↪ over time.
73         :param model_name: Name of the model being evaluated (e.g., 'a2c').
74         :param account_data: DataFrame containing account values with a 'date' column.
75         :param actions_data: DataFrame containing actions with a 'date' column.
76         """
77
78         _, ax = plt.subplots(2, 1, figsize=(12, 10), sharex=True)
79
80         # Plot account value
81         sns.lineplot(
82             data=account_data,
83             x="date",
84             y="account_value",
85             ax=ax[0],
86         )
87         ax[0].set_title("Account Value Over Time")
88         ax[0].set_xlabel("Date")
89         ax[0].set_ylabel("Account Value")
90         ax[0].tick_params(labelbottom=True)
91
92         # Format the actions_data
93         if "date" in actions_data.columns:
94             actions_data = actions_data.reset_index(drop=True).melt(
95                 id_vars="date", var_name="tic", value_name="action"
96             )
97         else:
98             actions_data = actions_data.reset_index().melt(
99                 id_vars="date", var_name="tic", value_name="action"
100             )
101         actions_data.sort_values(by=["date", "tic"]).reset_index(
102             drop=True, inplace=True
103         )
104
105         # Sample the first 10 tickers if there are more than 10 unique tickers
106         if actions_data["tic"].nunique() > 10:
107             sample_tickers = actions_data["tic"].unique()[:10]
108             actions_data = actions_data[
109                 actions_data["tic"].isin(sample_tickers)

```

```

109         ]
110
111     # Plot actions
112     sns.lineplot(
113         data=actions_data,
114         x="date",
115         y="action",
116         hue="tic",
117         ax=ax[1],
118     )
119     ax[1].set_title("Actions Over Time")
120     ax[1].set_xlabel("Date")
121     ax[1].set_ylabel("Actions")
122     ax[1].legend(title="Ticker")
123
124     plt.suptitle(f"Testing Results of {model_name.upper()} Agent", y=1)
125     plt.tight_layout()
126     plt.savefig(f"{self.directory}/{model_name}_test_evaluation.png")
127     plt.show()

```

Listing 19: shap_visualiser.py

```

1  from typing import Optional
2
3  import matplotlib.pyplot as plt
4  import numpy as np
5  import pandas as pd
6  import shap
7
8  shap.initjs()
9
10
11  class ShapVisualiser:
12      def __init__(
13          self,
14          shap_values: shap.Explanation,
15          action_space: pd.DataFrame,
16          X_test: pd.DataFrame,
17          directory: str,
18          filename: str,
19          model_name: str,
20          shap_interaction_values: Optional[np.ndarray] = None,
21      ) -> None:
22          """
23          Initializes the SHAP visualiser with SHAP values and action space.
24          :param shap_values: SHAP explanation object containing the SHAP values.
25          :param action_space: DataFrame containing the action space columns.
26          :param X_test: DataFrame containing the test state space data.
27          :param directory: Directory where plots will be saved.
28          :param filename: Base filename for the saved plots.
29          :param model_name: Name of the DRL model to which the feature importances belong
           ↪ to.

```

```

30         :param shap_interaction_values: SHAP interaction values for the features.
31         """
32         self.shap_values = shap_values
33         self.action_space = action_space
34         self.X_test = X_test
35         self.directory = directory
36         self.filename = filename
37         self.model_name = model_name
38         self.shap_interaction_values = shap_interaction_values
39
40     def beeswarm_plot(
41         self,
42         index: int,
43     ) -> None:
44         """
45         Create a beeswarm plot for the SHAP values.
46         :param index: Index of the asset in the action space to plot.
47         :return: None
48         """
49         ax = shap.plots.beeswarm(
50             self.shap_values[... , index],
51             show=False,
52             max_display=10,
53             group_remaining_features=False,
54         )
55         asset = self.action_space.columns[index]
56         ax.set_title(f"SHAP Beeswarm Plot for {asset}")
57         plt.savefig(
58             f"{self.directory}/{self.model_name}_{self.filename}_shap_beeswarm_{asset}."
59             ↪ "png"
60         )
61         plt.show()
62
63     def force_plot(
64         self,
65         index: int,
66     ) -> None:
67         """
68         Create a force plot for the SHAP values.
69         :param index: Index of the asset in the action space to plot.
70         :return: None
71         """
72         force_plot = shap.plots.force(
73             self.shap_values[... , index],
74             feature_names=self.X_test.columns,
75             link="logit",
76         )
77
78         shap.save_html(
79             f"{self.directory}/{self.model_name}_{self.filename}_shap_force_{self.action_}
80             ↪ n_space.columns[index]}.html",
81             force_plot,
82         )

```

```

82     def force_plot_single_obs(
83         self,
84         index: int,
85         obs: int,
86     ) -> None:
87         """
88         Create a force plot for a single observation.
89         :param index: Index of the asset in the action space to plot.
90         :param obs: Index of the observation to plot in time.
91         :return: None
92         """
93         shap.plots.force(
94             self.shap_values[obs, ..., index],
95             feature_names=self.X_test.columns,
96             link="logit",
97             matplotlib=True,
98             show=False,
99         )
100         asset = self.action_space.columns[index]
101
102         plt.title(
103             f"SHAP Force Plot for {asset} for observation {obs}",
104             fontsize=16,
105             y=1.5,
106         )
107
108         # Format value labels to two decimal places
109         for text in plt.gca().texts:
110             value = text.get_text()
111             # If value contains = sign, format the number
112             if "=" in value:
113                 parts = value.split("=")
114                 if len(parts) == 2:
115                     try:
116                         number = float(parts[1])
117                         text.set_text(f"{parts[0]}= {number:.3f}")
118                     except ValueError:
119                         pass
120
121         plt.savefig(
122             f"{self.directory}/{self.model_name}_{self.filename}_shap_force_single_obs_"
123             f"{asset}_{obs}.png"
124         )
125         plt.show()
126
127     def force_plot_assets(
128         self,
129         obs: int,
130     ) -> None:
131         """
132         Create force plots for each asset in the portfolio.
133         :param obs: Index of the observation to plot in time.
134         """
135         for index, _ in enumerate(self.action_space.columns):

```

```

135         self.force_plot_single_obs(index, obs)
136
137     def waterfall_plot_single_obs(
138         self,
139         index: int,
140         obs: int,
141     ) -> None:
142         """
143         Create a waterfall plot for the SHAP values.
144         :param index: Index of the asset in the action space to plot.
145         :param obs: Index of the observation to plot in time.
146         """
147         shap.plots.waterfall(
148             self.shap_values[obs, ..., index], show=False, max_display=10
149         )
150
151         asset = self.action_space.columns[index]
152
153         plt.title(f"SHAP Waterfall Plot for {asset}")
154         plt.savefig(
155             f"{self.directory}/{self.model_name}_{self.filename}_shap_waterfall_{asset}_"
156             ↪ ".png"
157         )
158         plt.show()
159
160     def heatmap(
161         self,
162         index: int,
163     ) -> None:
164         """
165         Create a heatmap for the SHAP values.
166         :param index: Index of the asset in the action space to plot.
167         :return: None
168         """
169         shap.plots.heatmap(
170             self.shap_values[..., index], max_display=10, show=False
171         )
172         asset = self.action_space.columns[index]
173         plt.title(f"SHAP Heatmap for {asset}")
174         plt.savefig(
175             f"{self.directory}/{self.model_name}_{self.filename}_shap_heatmap_{asset}.p"
176             ↪ "ng"
177         )
178         plt.show()
179
180     def interaction_plot(
181         self,
182         index: int,
183     ) -> None:
184         """
185         Create a summary plot for the SHAP interaction values.
186         :param index: Index of the asset in the action space to plot.
187         """
188         if self.shap_interaction_values is None:

```

```

187         raise ValueError("SHAP interaction values are not provided.")
188
189     shap.summary_plot(
190         self.shap_interaction_values[...], index, self.X_test, show=False
191     )
192
193     asset = self.action_space.columns[index]
194     plt.suptitle(
195         f"SHAP Interaction Values for {asset}",
196         y=1.1,
197         fontsize=14,
198     )
199     plt.savefig(
200         f"{self.directory}/{self.model_name}_{self.filename}_shap_interaction_{asset}
    ↪ t}.png"
201     )
202     plt.show()

```

Listing 20: style.mplstyle

```

1  ##### MATPLOTLIBRC FORMAT
2
3  ## *****
4  ## * LINES *
5  ## *****
6  ## See https://matplotlib.org/stable/api/artist_api.html#module-matplotlib.lines
7  ## for more information on line properties.
8  lines.linewidth: 1.0          # line width in points
9  lines.linestyle: -           # solid line
10
11 ## *****
12 ## * FONT *
13 ## *****
14 ## The font properties used by `text.Text`.
15
16
17 font.family: sans-serif
18 font.style: normal
19 font.variant: normal
20 font.weight: normal
21 font.stretch: normal
22 font.size: 10.0
23
24
25 ## *****
26 ## * TEXT *
27 ## *****
28 ## The text properties used by `text.Text`.
29
30 text.parse_math: True # Use mathtext if there is an even number of unescaped
31                      # dollar signs.
32

```



```

33
34 ## *****
35 ## * LaTeX *
36 ## *****
37 text.usetex: True # use latex for all text handling.
38
39
40 ## *****
41 ## * AXES *
42 ## *****
43 ## Following are default face and edge colors, default tick sizes,
44 ## default font sizes for tick labels, and so on. See
45 ## https://matplotlib.org/stable/api/axes\_api.html#module-matplotlib.axes
46 axes.facecolor: 0.97, 0.97, 0.97 # axes background color
47 axes.edgecolor: 0.8, 0.8, 0.8 # axes edge color
48 axes.linewidth: 1.0 # edge line width
49 axes.grid: True # display grid or not
50 axes.grid.axis: both # which axis the grid should apply to
51 axes.titlelocation: center # alignment of the title: {left, right, center}
52 axes.axisbelow: True # draw axis gridlines and ticks:
53 # - below patches (True)
54 # - above patches but below lines ('line')
55 # - above all (False)
56
57
58 axes.spines.left: True # display axis spines
59 axes.spines.bottom: True
60 axes.spines.top: True
61 axes.spines.right: True
62
63 axes.prop_cycle: cycler('color', ['ff85b6', 'ff8a91', 'ffbe88', 'fcea66', 'aaff99', '8fd388',
64 ↪ , '6de1c4', '4aefff', '84d1ff', 'bdb2ff'])
65
66
67 ## *****
68 ## * GRIDS *
69 ## *****
70 grid.color: (0.76, 0.78, 0.83) # grid color
71 grid.linestyle: -- # solid
72 grid.linewidth: 0.8 # in points
73 grid.alpha: 1.0 # transparency, between 0.0 and 1.0
74
75
76 ## *****
77 ## * LEGEND *
78 ## *****
79 legend.loc: best
80 legend.frameon: True # if True, draw the legend on a background patch
81 legend.fancybox: True # if True, use a rounded box for the
82 # legend background, else a rectangle
83 legend.shadow: False # if True, give background a shadow effect
84
85 ## *****

```

```

86  ## * FIGURE *
87  ## *****
88  figure.titlesize: x-large      # size of the figure title (`Figure.suptitle()`)
89  figure.titleweight: normal    # weight of the figure title
90  figure.labelsize: large       # size of the figure label (`Figure.sup[x/y]label()`)
91  figure.labelweight: normal    # weight of the figure label
92  figure.dpi: 200               # figure dots per inch
93  figure.facecolor: white       # figure face color
94  figure.edgecolor: white       # figure edge color
95  figure.frameon: True          # enable figure frame
96
97  ## Figure layout
98  figure.autolayout: True       # When True, automatically adjust subplot
99                                # parameters to make the plot fit the figure
100                               # using `tight_layout`
101
102
103  ## *****
104  ## * HISTOGRAM PLOTS *
105  ## *****
106  hist.bins: 10 # The default number of histogram bins or 'auto'.
107
108
109  ## *****
110  ## * SAVING FIGURES *
111  ## *****
112  ## The default savefig parameters can be different from the display parameters
113  savefig.facecolor: 'white'    # figure face color when saving
114  savefig.transparent: False    # whether figures are saved with a transparent
    ↪ background by default

```

G.8 Optimisation Module

Listing 21: wandb_opt.py

```

1  from typing import Tuple
2
3  import pandas as pd
4  import wandb
5  from wandb.integration.sb3 import WandbCallback
6
7  from agents.drl_agent import DRLAgent
8  from config import config_models
9  from environments.env_portfolio_optimisation import (
10      PortfolioOptimisationEnvWrapper,
11  )
12  from pbenchmark.portfolio_benchmark import PortfolioBenchmark
13
14  wandb.login()
15
16

```

```

17 class WandbOptimisation:
18     def __init__(
19         self,
20         entity: str,
21         project: str,
22         train_data: pd.DataFrame,
23         val_data: pd.DataFrame,
24         test_data: pd.DataFrame,
25         state_columns: list,
26     ):
27         """
28         Initialize the WandbOptimisation class.
29         :param entity: The entity name for Weights & Biases.
30         :param project: The project name for Weights & Biases.
31         :param train_data: The training data.
32         :param val_data: The validation data.
33         :param test_data: The test data.
34         :param state_columns: The columns that represent the environment.
35         """
36         self.entity = entity
37         self.project = project
38         self.train_data = train_data
39         self.val_data = val_data
40         self.test_data = test_data
41         self.state_columns = state_columns
42
43         # Initialise wandb API
44         self.api = wandb.Api()
45
46         # Initialise portfolio benchmark
47         self.portfolio_benchmark = PortfolioBenchmark()
48
49     def wandb_train(
50         self,
51         model_name: str,
52     ):
53         """
54         Train a model using Weights & Biases.
55         :param model_name: The name of the model to train.
56         :param train_data: The training data.
57         :param val_data: The validation data.
58         :param state_columns: The columns that represent the environment.
59         """
60         with wandb.init(settings={"quiet": "True"}) as run:
61             environment = PortfolioOptimisationEnvWrapper(
62                 train_data=self.train_data,
63                 trade_data=self.val_data,
64                 state_columns=self.state_columns,
65                 verbose=0,
66             )
67
68             env_train = environment.get_train_env()
69             gym_env, _ = environment.get_trade_env()
70
71             agent = DRLAgent(run)

```

```

72
73     configuration = wandb.config.as_dict()
74
75     model = agent.get_model(
76         model_name,
77         model_kwargs=configuration,
78         environment=env_train,
79         directory=None,
80         use_case="portfolio-optimisation",
81         verbose=0,
82     )
83
84     trained_model = agent.train(
85         model,
86         tb_log_name=model_name,
87         callback=WandbCallback(),
88     )
89
90     df_account, _ = agent.predict(trained_model, gym_env)
91
92     metrics = {
93         "sharpe_ratio": self.portfolio_benchmark.compute_sharpe_ratio(
94             df_account
95         ),
96         "cumulative_return": self.portfolio_benchmark.compute_cum_returns(
97             df_account
98         ),
99     }
100
101     wandb.log(metrics)
102
103     def sweep(
104         self,
105         sweep_config: dict,
106         model_name: str,
107         number_trials: int = 5,
108     ) -> str:
109         """
110         Start a sweep for hyperparameter optimization.
111         :param sweep_config: The sweep configuration.
112         :param model_name: The name of the model to optimize.
113         :param number_trials: The number of trials to run.
114         :return: The sweep ID.
115         """
116         configuration = sweep_config
117         configuration["parameters"] = config_models.MODEL_SWEEP_CONFIG[
118             model_name
119         ]
120
121         sweep_id = wandb.sweep(configuration, project=self.project)
122         wandb.agent(
123             sweep_id,
124             lambda model_name=model_name: self.wandb_train(model_name),
125             count=number_trials,
126         )

```

```

127
128         return sweep_id
129
130     def get_best_sweep_run(
131         self, sweep_id: str, model_name: str
132     ) -> Tuple[str, dict]:
133         """
134         Get the best sweep run for a given model.
135         :param sweep_id: The ID of the sweep.
136         :param model_name: The name of the model.
137         :return: The best run ID and configuration.
138         """
139         sweep = self.api.sweep(f"{self.entity}/{self.project}/{sweep_id}")
140         runs = sweep.runs
141
142         best_run = max(
143             runs,
144             key=lambda run: run.summary.get("sharpe_ratio", 0),
145         )
146         best_run_config = best_run.config
147
148         best_config = dict()
149         print("Best run configuration:")
150         for key in config_models.MODEL_SWEEP_CONFIG[model_name]:
151             best_config[key] = best_run_config.get(key, 0)
152             if type(best_config[key]) is float:
153                 print(f"\t{key}: {best_config[key]:.6f}")
154             else:
155                 print(f"\t{key}: {best_config[key]}")
156
157         print("Best run metrics:")
158         for key in [
159             "sharpe_ratio",
160             "cumulative_return",
161         ]:
162             print(f"\t{key}: {best_run.summary.get(key, 0):.4f}")
163
164         return best_run.id, best_config
165
166     def test_best_run(
167         self,
168         model_name: str,
169         configuration: dict,
170         train_val_data: pd.DataFrame,
171         logs_directory: str,
172         models_directory: str,
173     ) -> Tuple[pd.DataFrame, pd.DataFrame]:
174         """
175         Test the best run configuration for a given model.
176         :param model_name: The name of the model.
177         :param configuration: The configuration of the model.
178         :param train_val_data: The training and validation data.
179         :param logs_directory: The directory to save logs.
180         :param models_directory: The directory to save models.
181         :return: The account and actions DataFrames.

```

```

182     """
183     environment = PortfolioOptimisationEnvWrapper(
184         train_data=train_val_data,
185         trade_data=self.test_data,
186         state_columns=self.state_columns,
187     )
188
189     env_train = environment.get_train_env()
190     gym_env, _ = environment.get_trade_env()
191
192     agent = DRLAgent()
193
194     model = agent.get_model(
195         model_name,
196         model_kwargs=configuration,
197         environment=env_train,
198         directory=logs_directory,
199         use_case="portfolio-optimisation",
200     )
201
202     print(f"Training model: {model_name.upper()}")
203     trained_model = agent.train(
204         model,
205         tb_log_name=model_name,
206     )
207
208     print(f"Saving model: {model_name.upper()}")
209     agent.save_model(
210         model=trained_model,
211         model_name=model_name,
212         directory=models_directory,
213     )
214
215     print(f"Evaluating model: {model_name.upper()}")
216     df_account, df_actions = agent.predict(
217         model=trained_model,
218         environment=gym_env,
219     )
220
221     return df_account, df_actions

```

G.9 Examples

The examples are originally a set of Jupyter Notebooks. However, for visualisation purposes in this report, they have been converted to Python scripts.

`finddownloader.ipynb` demonstrates how to download the data for the tickers specified in the `config/config.py` file.

Listing 22: findownloader.py

```

1  # Financial Data Downloader example
2
3  import os
4  import sys
5
6  REPO_ROOT = "/Users/ingridperez/Documents/GitHub Repositories/xdl-portfolio"
7  sys.path.append(REPO_ROOT)
8
9  from config import config
10 from preprocessor.findata_downloader import FinancialDataDownloader
11 from visualiser.findata_visualiser import FinancialDataVisualiser
12
13 data_dir = f"{REPO_ROOT}/{config.DATA_DIR}/{config.DATASET_NAME}"
14 plot_dir = (
15     f"{REPO_ROOT}/{config.PLOT_DIR}/{config.TICKERS_NAME}/{config.DATASET_NAME}"
16 )
17
18 if not os.path.exists(data_dir):
19     os.makedirs(data_dir)
20
21 if not os.path.exists(plot_dir):
22     os.makedirs(plot_dir)
23
24 findownloader = FinancialDataDownloader(
25     start_date=config.START_DATE,
26     end_date=config.END_DATE,
27 )
28
29 data = findownloader.download_data(tickers=config.TICKERS)
30
31 findownloader.save_data(
32     directory=data_dir,
33     filename=config.TICKERS_NAME,
34 )
35
36 finvisualiser = FinancialDataVisualiser(directory=plot_dir)
37 finvisualiser.plot_close_prices(data=data)

```

finpreprocessor.ipynb demonstrates how to preprocess the data downloaded in the previous step. This includes calculating technical indicators, macroeconomic indicators, and other features.

Listing 23: finpreprocessor.py

```

1  # Financial Data Preprocessing
2
3  import os

```

```

4 import sys
5
6 REPO_ROOT = "/Users/ingridperez/Documents/GitHub Repositories/xdl-portfolio"
7 sys.path.append(REPO_ROOT)
8
9 from config import config, config_indicators
10 from preprocessor.findata_downloader import FinancialDataDownloader
11 from preprocessor.findata_preprocessor import FinancialDataPreprocessor
12 from visualiser.findata_visualiser import FinancialDataVisualiser
13
14 data_dir = f"{REPO_ROOT}/{config.DATA_DIR}/{config.DATASET_NAME}"
15 plot_dir = (
16     f"{REPO_ROOT}/{config.PLOT_DIR}/{config.TICKERS_NAME}/{config.DATASET_NAME}"
17 )
18
19 if not os.path.exists(plot_dir):
20     os.makedirs(plot_dir)
21
22 findownloader = FinancialDataDownloader(
23     start_date=config.START_DATE,
24     end_date=config.END_DATE,
25 )
26 data = findownloader.load_data(
27     directory=data_dir,
28     filename=config.TICKERS_NAME,
29 )
30
31 finpreprocessor = FinancialDataPreprocessor(
32     start_date=config.START_DATE,
33     end_date=config.END_DATE,
34 )
35 data = finpreprocessor.preprocess(
36     data=data,
37     exchange=config.EXCHANGE,
38     use_tech_indicators=config.USE_TECHNICAL_INDICATORS,
39     tech_indicators=list(config_indicators.TECHNICAL_INDICATORS.keys()),
40     use_macro_indicators=config.USE_MACROECONOMIC_INDICATORS,
41     macro_indicators=(
42         list(config.MACROECONOMIC_INDICATORS.keys())
43         if config.USE_MACROECONOMIC_INDICATORS
44         else []
45     ),
46     use_covariance=config.USE_COVARIANCE_FEATURES,
47 )
48
49 finvisualiser = FinancialDataVisualiser(directory=plot_dir)
50 finvisualiser.plot_close_prices(
51     data=data,
52     filename="processed_close_prices",
53 )
54
55 if config.USE_TECHNICAL_INDICATORS:
56     finvisualiser.plot_technical_indicators(
57         data=data,
58         indicators=config_indicators.TECHNICAL_INDICATORS,

```



```

59     )
60
61     if config.USE_MACROECONOMIC_INDICATORS:
62         finvisualiser.plot_macroeconomic_indicators(
63             data=data,
64             indicators=config.MACROECONOMIC_INDICATORS,
65         )
66
67     train_data, test_data = finpreprocessor.split_train_test(
68         data=data,
69         test_start_date=config.TEST_START_DATE,
70     )
71
72     finvisualiser.plot_train_test_close_prices(
73         train_data=train_data,
74         test_data=test_data,
75     )
76
77     finpreprocessor.save_train_test_data(
78         train_data=train_data,
79         test_data=test_data,
80         directory=data_dir,
81         filename=config.TICKERS_NAME,
82     )

```

portfolio_optimisation.ipynb demonstrates how to use the portfolio optimisation environment and train agents to optimise a portfolio of stocks using reinforcement learning.

Listing 24: portfolio_optimisation.py

```

1  # Portfolio Optimisation Example
2
3  import os
4  import sys
5
6  REPO_ROOT = "/Users/ingridperez/Documents/GitHub Repositories/xdl-portfolio"
7  sys.path.append(REPO_ROOT)
8
9  from agents.drl_agent import DRLAgent
10 from config import config, config_models
11 from environments.env_portfolio_optimisation import (
12     PortfolioOptimisationEnvWrapper,
13 )
14 from preprocessor.findata_preprocessor import FinancialDataPreprocessor
15 from visualiser.model_visualiser import ModelVisualiser
16
17 USE_CASE = "portfolio-optimisation"
18
19 data_dir = f"{REPO_ROOT}/{config.DATA_DIR}/{config.DATASET_NAME}"
20 plot_dir = f"{REPO_ROOT}/{config.PLOT_DIR}/{config.TICKERS_NAME}/{config.DATASET_NAME}/
↪ {USE_CASE}"

```

```

21 models_dir = f"{REPO_ROOT}/{config.MODELS_DIR}/{USE_CASE}/{config.TICKERS_NAME}/{config.DATASET_NAME}"
22 logs_dir = f"{REPO_ROOT}/{config.LOGS_DIR}/{USE_CASE}/{config.TICKERS_NAME}/{config.DATASET_NAME}"
23
24 if not os.path.exists(plot_dir):
25     os.makedirs(plot_dir)
26
27 if not os.path.exists(models_dir):
28     os.makedirs(models_dir)
29
30 if not os.path.exists(logs_dir):
31     os.makedirs(logs_dir)
32
33 TRAIN = True
34
35 finpreprocessor = FinancialDataPreprocessor(
36     start_date=config.START_DATE,
37     end_date=config.END_DATE,
38 )
39 train_data, trade_data = finpreprocessor.load_train_test_data(
40     directory=data_dir,
41     filename=config.TICKERS_NAME,
42 )
43
44 environment = PortfolioOptimisationEnvWrapper(
45     train_data=train_data,
46     trade_data=trade_data,
47     state_columns=config.ENVIRONMENT_COLUMNS,
48 )
49
50 model_visualiser = ModelVisualiser(directory=plot_dir)
51
52 for model_name in config_models.MODELS.keys():
53
54     env_train = environment.get_train_env()
55     gym_env, _ = environment.get_trade_env()
56
57     agent = DRLAgent()
58
59     model = agent.get_model(
60         model_name=model_name,
61         environment=env_train,
62         directory=logs_dir,
63         use_case=USE_CASE,
64     )
65
66     if TRAIN:
67         print(f"Training model: {model_name.upper()}")
68         trained_model = agent.train(
69             model=model,
70             tb_log_name=model_name,
71         )
72         print(f"Saving model: {model_name.upper()}")

```

```

73         agent.save_model(
74             model=model,
75             model_name=model_name,
76             directory=models_dir,
77         )
78
79         visualisation_config = config_models.train_visualisation_config[
80             model_name
81         ]
82
83         model_visualiser.evaluate_training(
84             model_name=model_name,
85             x=visualisation_config["x"],
86             y=visualisation_config["y"],
87             title=visualisation_config["title"],
88             logs_dir=logs_dir,
89         )
90
91     else:
92         print(f"Loading model: {model_name.upper()}")
93         trained_model = agent.load_model(
94             model_name=model_name,
95             directory=models_dir,
96         )
97
98         print(f"Evaluating model: {model_name.upper()}")
99         df_account, df_actions = agent.predict(
100             model=trained_model,
101             environment=gym_env,
102         )
103
104         model_visualiser.evaluate_testing(
105             model_name=model_name,
106             account_data=df_account,
107             actions_data=df_actions,
108         )

```

backtesting.ipynb demonstrates how to run the benchmark strategies and compare the performance of the trained agents against these benchmarks according to the evaluation metrics.

Listing 25: backtesting.py

```

1  # Backtesting and benchmarking of the trading strategies
2  import os
3  import sys
4
5  REPO_ROOT = "/Users/ingridperez/Documents/GitHub Repositories/xdl-portfolio"
6  sys.path.append(REPO_ROOT)
7

```

```

8 import pandas as pd
9
10 from agents.drl_agent import DRLAgent
11 from config import config, config_models
12 from environments.env_portfolio_optimisation import (
13     PortfolioOptimisationEnvWrapper,
14 )
15 from environments.env_stock_trading import StockTradingEnvWrapper
16 from pbenchmark.portfolio_benchmark import PortfolioBenchmark
17 from preprocessor.finddata_preprocessor import FinancialDataPreprocessor
18 from visualiser.benchmark_visualiser import BenchmarkVisualiser
19
20 USE_CASE = "portfolio-optimisation"
21
22 data_dir = f"{REPO_ROOT}/{config.DATA_DIR}/{config.DATASET_NAME}"
23 plot_dir = f"{REPO_ROOT}/{config.PLOT_DIR}/{config.TICKERS_NAME}/{config.DATASET_NAME}/"
24     ↳ {USE_CASE}"
25 models_dir = f"{REPO_ROOT}/{config.MODELS_DIR}/{USE_CASE}/{config.TICKERS_NAME}/{config.DATASET_NAME}"
26     ↳ .DATASET_NAME}"
27 results_dir = (
28     f"{REPO_ROOT}/{config.RESULTS_DIR}/{USE_CASE}/{config.DATASET_NAME}"
29 )
30
31 if not os.path.exists(plot_dir):
32     os.makedirs(plot_dir)
33
34 if not os.path.exists(results_dir):
35     os.makedirs(results_dir)
36
37 finpreprocessor = FinancialDataPreprocessor(
38     start_date=config.START_DATE,
39     end_date=config.END_DATE,
40 )
41
42 train_data, trade_data = finpreprocessor.load_train_test_data(
43     directory=data_dir,
44     filename=config.TICKERS_NAME,
45 )
46
47 if USE_CASE == "stock-trading":
48     environment = StockTradingEnvWrapper(
49         train_data=train_data,
50         trade_data=trade_data,
51         state_columns=config.ENVIRONMENT_COLUMNS,
52     )
53 elif USE_CASE == "portfolio-optimisation":
54     environment = PortfolioOptimisationEnvWrapper(
55         train_data=train_data,
56         trade_data=trade_data,
57         state_columns=config.ENVIRONMENT_COLUMNS,
58     )
59
60 benchmark = PortfolioBenchmark()
61
62 df_account = pd.DataFrame()

```

```

60 perf_stats = dict()
61
62 for model_name in config_models.MODELS.keys():
63
64     env_train = environment.get_train_env()
65     gym_env, _ = environment.get_trade_env()
66
67     agent = DRLAgent()
68
69     print(f"Loading model: {model_name.upper()}")
70     trained_model = agent.load_model(
71         model_name=model_name,
72         directory=models_dir,
73     )
74
75     print(f"Evaluating model: {model_name.upper()}")
76     df_account_alg, _ = agent.predict(
77         model=trained_model,
78         environment=gym_env,
79     )
80
81     df_account_alg["model"] = model_name.upper()
82
83     df_account = pd.concat([df_account, df_account_alg], ignore_index=True)
84
85     perf_stats_alg = benchmark.compute_perf_stats(df_account=df_account_alg)
86
87     perf_stats[model_name.upper()] = perf_stats_alg
88
89 benchmark.set_data(
90     train_data=train_data,
91     trade_data=trade_data,
92 )
93
94 for strategy in ["mean", "min", "momentum", "equal"]:
95     print(f"Optimising portfolio with strategy: {strategy}")
96     try:
97         df_account_strat = benchmark.optimise_portfolio(
98             strategy=strategy, # type: ignore
99         )
100
101         # Add cumulative returns to the account dataframe
102         df_account_strat["cumulative_return"] = (
103             1 + df_account_strat["daily_return"]
104         ).cumprod() - 1
105
106         df_account_strat["model"] = strategy.capitalize()
107         df_account = pd.concat([df_account, df_account_strat], ignore_index=True) #
108         ↪ type: ignore
109
110         perf_stats_alg = benchmark.compute_perf_stats(
111             df_account=df_account_strat
112         )
113         perf_stats[strategy.capitalize()] = perf_stats_alg

```

```

113     except Exception as e:
114         print(
115             f"Error occurred while optimising portfolio with strategy {strategy}: {e}"
116         )
117
118 if config.INDEX is not None:
119     df_account_strat = benchmark.get_index_performance(
120         config.TEST_START_DATE, config.TEST_END_DATE, config.INDEX
121     )
122
123     df_account = pd.concat([df_account, df_account_strat], ignore_index=True) # type:
124     ↪ ignore
125
126     perf_stats_alg = benchmark.compute_perf_stats(df_account=df_account_strat)
127     perf_stats["Index"] = perf_stats_alg
128
129 perf_stats = pd.DataFrame(perf_stats)
130 perf_stats.to_csv(
131     f"{results_dir}/{config.TICKERS_NAME}_performance_stats.csv",
132     index=True,
133 )
134
135 benchmark_visualiser = BenchmarkVisualiser(directory=plot_dir)
136
137 benchmark_visualiser.compare_account_value(data=df_account)
138
139 benchmark_visualiser.compare_cum_returns(data=df_account)

```

hyperparameter_tuning.ipynb demonstrates how to use Weights and Biases to perform hyper-parameter tuning by running a sweep, whose configuration is in `config.py` and `config.models.py`.

Listing 26: hyperparameter_tuning.py

```

1 # Hyper-parameter tuning
2
3 import os
4 import sys
5
6 REPO_ROOT = "/Users/ingridperez/Documents/GitHub Repositories/xdl-portfolio"
7 sys.path.append(REPO_ROOT)
8
9 from config import config
10 from optimisation.wandb_opt import WandbOptimisation
11 from pbenchmark.portfolio_benchmark import PortfolioBenchmark
12 from preprocessor.findata_preprocessor import FinancialDataPreprocessor
13 from visualiser.findata_visualiser import FinancialDataVisualiser
14 from visualiser.model_visualiser import ModelVisualiser
15
16 USE_CASE = "portfolio-optimisation"

```

```

17
18 data_dir = f"{REPO_ROOT}/{config.DATA_DIR}/{config.DATASET_NAME}"
19 plot_dir = (
20     f"{REPO_ROOT}/{config.PLOT_DIR}/{config.TICKERS_NAME}/{config.DATASET_NAME}"
21 )
22 models_dir = f"{REPO_ROOT}/{config.MODELS_DIR}/{USE_CASE}/{config.TICKERS_NAME}/{config.DATASET_NAME}"
23 results_dir = (
24     f"{REPO_ROOT}/{config.RESULTS_DIR}/{USE_CASE}/{config.DATASET_NAME}"
25 )
26 logs_dir = f"{REPO_ROOT}/{config.LOGS_DIR}/{USE_CASE}/{config.TICKERS_NAME}/{config.DATASET_NAME}"
27
28 if not os.path.exists(plot_dir):
29     os.makedirs(plot_dir)
30
31 if not os.path.exists(results_dir):
32     os.makedirs(results_dir)
33
34 finpreprocessor = FinancialDataPreprocessor(
35     start_date=config.START_DATE,
36     end_date=config.END_DATE,
37 )
38 train_val_data, trade_data = finpreprocessor.load_train_test_data(
39     directory=data_dir,
40     filename=config.TICKERS_NAME,
41 )
42
43 # Split the training data into training and validation sets
44 train_data, val_data = finpreprocessor.split_train_test(
45     data=train_val_data,
46     test_start_date=config.VAL_START_DATE,
47 )
48
49 visualiser = FinancialDataVisualiser(directory=plot_dir)
50 visualiser.plot_train_val_test_close_prices(
51     train_data=train_data,
52     val_data=val_data,
53     test_data=trade_data,
54 )
55
56 wandb_opt = WandbOptimisation(
57     entity=config.WANDB_ENTITY,
58     project=config.WANDB_PROJECT,
59     train_data=train_data,
60     val_data=val_data,
61     test_data=trade_data,
62     state_columns=config.ENVIRONMENT_COLUMNS,
63 )
64
65 model_visualiser = ModelVisualiser(directory=plot_dir)
66 benchmark = PortfolioBenchmark()
67
68 sweep_ids = {}

```

```

69 best_runs = {}
70 perf_stats = {}
71
72
73 def perform_model_sweep(model_name: str):
74
75     # Start sweep
76     sweep_id = wandb_opt.sweep(
77         sweep_config=config.SWEEP_CONFIG,
78         model_name=model_name,
79     )
80     sweep_ids[model_name] = sweep_id
81
82     # Retrieve best run
83     run_id, configuration = wandb_opt.get_best_sweep_run(
84         sweep_id=sweep_id, model_name=model_name
85     )
86
87     best_runs[model_name] = (run_id, configuration)
88
89     # Test the best hyperparameters on the test_set
90     df_account, df_actions = wandb_opt.test_best_run(
91         model_name=model_name,
92         configuration=configuration,
93         train_val_data=train_val_data,
94         logs_directory=logs_dir,
95         models_directory=models_dir,
96     )
97
98     model_visualiser.evaluate_testing(
99         model_name=model_name,
100         account_data=df_account,
101         actions_data=df_actions,
102     )
103
104     # Compute performance statistics
105     perf_stats_alg = benchmark.compute_perf_stats(df_account=df_account)
106     perf_stats[model_name] = perf_stats_alg
107
108
109     # A2C
110     model_name = "a2c"
111     perform_model_sweep(model_name)
112
113     # PPO
114     model_name = "ppo"
115     perform_model_sweep(model_name)
116
117     # DDPG
118     model_name = "ddpg"
119     perform_model_sweep(model_name)
120
121     # TD3
122     model_name = "td3"
123     perform_model_sweep(model_name)

```



```

124
125 # SAC
126 model_name = "sac"
127 perform_model_sweep(model_name)

```

`explainability.ipynb` demonstrates how to use the explainability tools (feature importance, LIME and SHAP) to understand the decision-making process of a single model.

Listing 27: `explainability.py`

```

1  # Explainability
2
3  import os
4  import sys
5
6  REPO_ROOT = "/Users/ingridperez/Documents/GitHub Repositories/xdl-portfolio"
7  sys.path.append(REPO_ROOT)
8
9  import numpy as np
10 import torch
11
12 from agents.drl_agent import DRLAgent
13 from config import config
14 from environments.env_portfolio_optimisation import (
15     PortfolioOptimisationEnvWrapper,
16 )
17 from environments.env_stock_trading import StockTradingEnvWrapper
18 from explainability.explainability import Explainer
19 from explainability.feature_importance import FeatureImportance
20 from explainability.lime_explainability import LimeExplainer
21 from explainability.shap_explainability import ShapExplainer
22 from preprocessor.findata_preprocessor import FinancialDataPreprocessor
23 from visualiser.shap_visualiser import ShapVisualiser
24
25 USE_CASE = "portfolio-optimisation"
26
27 data_dir = f"{REPO_ROOT}/{config.DATA_DIR}/{config.DATASET_NAME}"
28 plot_dir = f"{REPO_ROOT}/{config.PLOT_DIR}/{config.TICKERS_NAME}/{config.DATASET_NAME}/"
29 ↪ {USE_CASE}"
30 models_dir = f"{REPO_ROOT}/{config.MODELS_DIR}/{USE_CASE}/{config.TICKERS_NAME}/{config.DATASET_NAME}"
31 ↪ .DATASET_NAME}"
32 logs_dir = f"{REPO_ROOT}/{config.LOGS_DIR}/{USE_CASE}/{config.TICKERS_NAME}/{config.DATASET_NAME}"
33 ↪ ASET_NAME}"
34
35 if not os.path.exists(plot_dir):
36     os.makedirs(plot_dir)
37
38 finpreprocessor = FinancialDataPreprocessor(
39     start_date=config.START_DATE,
40     end_date=config.END_DATE,
41 )

```

```

39 train_data, trade_data = finpreprocessor.load_train_test_data(
40     directory=data_dir,
41     filename=config.TICKERS_NAME,
42 )
43
44 if USE_CASE == "stock-trading":
45     environment = StockTradingEnvWrapper(
46         train_data=train_data,
47         trade_data=trade_data,
48         state_columns=config.ENVIRONMENT_COLUMNS,
49     )
50 elif USE_CASE == "portfolio-optimisation":
51     environment = PortfolioOptimisationEnvWrapper(
52         train_data=train_data,
53         trade_data=trade_data,
54         state_columns=config.ENVIRONMENT_COLUMNS,
55     )
56
57 # Load the results of a DRL agent
58 model_name = "a2c"
59
60 env_train = environment.get_train_env()
61 gym_env, _ = environment.get_trade_env()
62
63 agent = DRLAgent()
64
65 model = agent.get_model(
66     model_name=model_name,
67     environment=env_train,
68     directory=logs_dir,
69     use_case=USE_CASE,
70 )
71
72 print(f"Loading model: {model_name.upper()}")
73 trained_model = agent.load_model(
74     model_name=model_name,
75     directory=models_dir,
76 )
77
78 policy = trained_model.policy
79
80 print(f"Evaluating model: {model_name.upper()}")
81 df_account, _ = agent.predict(
82     model=trained_model,
83     environment=gym_env,
84 )
85
86 print(f"Evaluating model: {model_name.upper()}")
87 df_account, df_actions = agent.predict(trained_model, gym_env)
88
89 # Set up the explainer
90 explainability = Explainer()
91
92 state_space = explainability.build_state_space(
93     data=trade_data,

```

```

94     columns=config.ENVIRONMENT_COLUMNS,
95 )
96
97 action_space = explainability.build_action_space(data=df_actions)
98
99 X_train, X_test, y_train, y_test = explainability.split_data(
100     state_space=state_space,
101     action_space=action_space,
102 )
103
104 ## Build Random Forest model to be used for Proxy explanations
105 rf_model = explainability.build_proxy_explanation_model(
106     X_train=X_train,
107     y_train=y_train,
108     find_best_params=False,
109 )
110
111
112 ## Prediction function for the policy
113 def predict(states: list) -> np.ndarray:
114     """
115     Predict the action for a given state using the policy.
116     """
117     with torch.no_grad():
118         states_tensor = torch.tensor(states, dtype=torch.float32)
119         action, _ = policy.predict(
120             states_tensor.reshape(
121                 -1, environment.state_space, environment.stock_dim
122             ).numpy()
123         )
124     return action
125
126
127 # Feature Importance
128
129 ## Proxy Feature Importance
130 feature_imp = FeatureImportance(
131     model=rf_model,
132     columns=X_train.columns.to_list(),
133     directory=plot_dir,
134     model_name=model_name,
135 )
136 feature_importances = feature_imp.get_feature_importances()
137
138 feature_imp.plot_feature_importances()
139
140 feature_imp.plot_feature_importances_by_ticker()
141
142 feature_imp.plot_feature_importance_comparison(Statistic="mean")
143
144 feature_imp.plot_feature_importance_by_indicator()
145
146 feature_imp.plot_top_features_per_ticker()
147
148 feature_imp.plot_top_features_per_indicator()

```

```

149
150 feature_imp.plot_mean_importance_by_ticker()
151
152 feature_imp.plot_mean_importance_by_indicator()
153
154 # LIME
155 lime_explainer = LimeExplainer(directory=plot_dir, model_name=model_name)
156 explainer = lime_explainer.build_lime_explainer(X_train=X_train)
157
158 ## Proxy LIME
159 lime_explainer.explain_portfolio(
160     instance=X_test.iloc[0],
161     columns=action_space.columns.values.tolist(),
162     predict_fn=rf_model.predict,
163     filename="proxy",
164 )
165
166 ## DRL Lime
167
168 lime_explainer.explain_portfolio(
169     instance=X_test.iloc[0],
170     columns=action_space.columns.values.tolist(),
171     predict_fn=predict,
172     filename="direct",
173 )
174
175 # SHAP
176 shap_explainer = ShapExplainer()
177
178 ## Proxy SHAP
179 explainer = shap_explainer.build_proxy_explainer(model=rf_model)
180
181 shap_values = shap_explainer.compute_shap_values(
182     explainer=explainer,
183     X_test=X_test,
184 )
185
186 shap_interaction_values = shap_explainer.compute_shap_interaction_values(
187     explainer=explainer,
188     X_test=X_test,
189 )
190
191 shap_visualiser = ShapVisualiser(
192     shap_values=shap_values,
193     action_space=action_space,
194     X_test=X_test,
195     shap_interaction_values=shap_interaction_values,
196     directory=plot_dir,
197     filename="proxy",
198     model_name=model_name,
199 )
200
201 index = 0
202 shap_visualiser.beeswarm_plot(index=index)
203

```

```

204 shap_visualiser.force_plot(index=index)
205
206 obs = 0
207 shap_visualiser.force_plot_single_obs(
208     index=index,
209     obs=obs,
210 )
211
212 shap_visualiser.waterfall_plot_single_obs(
213     index=index,
214     obs=obs,
215 )
216
217 shap_visualiser.heatmap(
218     index=index,
219 )
220
221 shap_visualiser.interaction_plot(
222     index=index,
223 )
224
225 ## Kernel SHAP
226 explainer = shap_explainer.build_kernel_explainer(
227     predict_fn=predict,
228     X_train=X_train,
229 )
230
231 shap_values = shap_explainer.compute_shap_values(
232     explainer=explainer,
233     X_test=X_test,
234 )
235
236 shap_visualiser = ShapVisualiser(
237     shap_values=shap_values,
238     action_space=action_space,
239     X_test=X_test,
240     shap_interaction_values=shap_interaction_values,
241     directory=plot_dir,
242     filename="direct",
243     model_name=model_name,
244 )
245
246 index = 0
247 shap_visualiser.beeswarm_plot(index=index)
248
249 shap_visualiser.force_plot(index=index)
250
251 obs = 0
252 shap_visualiser.force_plot_single_obs(
253     index=index,
254     obs=obs,
255 )
256
257 shap_visualiser.force_plot_assets(obs=obs)
258

```

```
259 shap_visualiser.waterfall_plot_single_obs(  
260     index=index,  
261     obs=obs,  
262 )  
263  
264 shap_visualiser.heatmap(index=index)
```
